Learning to Interpret the New Testament on the Basis of the Original Greek

Professor David Kuske

2006

Table of Contents

COURSE DIAGRAM **4**

INTRODUCTION **5**

UNIT A. INTRODUCTORY LESSONS **7**

LESSON 1 GREEK ALPHABET, DIPHTHONGS, SYLLABIFICATION 7
LESSON 2 ACCENTS, APOSTROPHE AND BREATHING MARKS, PUNCTUATION 12
LESSON 3 SENTENCE STRUCTURE: VERBS, ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, NOUNS, ADJECTIVES 16

UNIT B. VERB TENSES **22**

LESSON 4 PRESENT TENSE 22
LESSON 5 IMPERFECT TENSE 26
LESSON 6 FUTURE TENSE 29
LESSON 7 AORIST TENSE 32
LESSON 8 PERFECT TENSE 36

UNIT C. VERB MODIFIERS **41**

LESSON 9 ADVERBS 41
LESSON 10 ADVERBIAL CLAUSES 44
LESSON 11 PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES 47
LESSON 12 INFINITIVES 51

UNIT D. NOUN CASES **56**

LESSON 13 NOMINATIVE CASE 56
LESSON 14 ACCUSATIVE CASE 60
LESSON 15 DATIVE CASE (INDIRECT OBJECT, ADVERBIAL) 64
LESSON 16 GENITIVE CASE (POSSESSIVE, SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE) 69
LESSON 17 FEMININE NOUNS 74
LESSON 18 NEUTER NOUNS 78
LESSON 19 ANOTHER FORM OF MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS 83
LESSON 20 ANOTHER FORM OF NEUTER NOUNS 88
LESSON 21 NOUNS WITH UNUSUAL FORMS 93

UNIT E. NOUN MODIFIERS **98**

LESSON 22 ADJECTIVES 98
LESSON 23 RELATIVE CLAUSES 103
LESSON 24 DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE 108
LESSON 25 ARTICLES 111

UNIT F. PARTICIPLES **117**

LESSON 26 ADJECTIVAL (ATTRIBUTIVE) PARTICIPLES 117
LESSON 27 ADVERBIAL (CIRCUMSTANTIAL) PARTICIPLES 123
LESSON 28 COMPLEMENTARY PARTICIPLES 128

UNIT G. PRONOUNS **133**

LESSON 29 PERSONAL, INTENSIVE, RELATIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS 133
LESSON 30 INTERROGATIVE, INDEFINITE, REFLEXIVE, RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS 140

UNIT H. VERBS: VOICE, MOOD, IRREGULAR 148

Lesson 31 Middle and Passive Voice 148
Lesson 32 Imperative Mood 158
Lesson 33 Subjunctive and Optative Moods 165
Lesson 34 Linking Verbs (εἰμί, γίνομαι) 174
Lesson 35 Compound and Contract Verbs 179
Lesson 36 -μι Verbs 187

UNIT I. CONJUNCTIONS 194

Lesson 37 Coordinating 194
Lesson 38 Subordinating 201
Lesson 39 Καί and γάρ Explanatory 206

UNIT J. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES 211

Lesson 40 Simple Conditionals 211
Lesson 41 Present General Conditionals and Future More Vivid Conditionals 214
Lesson 42 Contrary to Fact Conditionals. 218

UNIT K. VERBS: INCIDENTALS 221

Lesson 43 Second Aorist, Pluperfect 221
Lesson 44 Liquid and Nasal Verbs 226
Lesson 45 Οὐ and μή in Questions, Periphrastics 231
Lesson 46 Genitive Absolute, Indirect Discourse 235

UNIT L. NOUNS: INCIDENTALS 239

Lesson 47 Vocative Case, Appositives, Predicate Nominative 239
Lesson 48 Collective Nouns, Neuter Plural Nouns, Comparative and Superlative Adjectives 244

VERSE REFERENCE INDEX 249

THE GREEK ALPHABET 252

Course Diagram

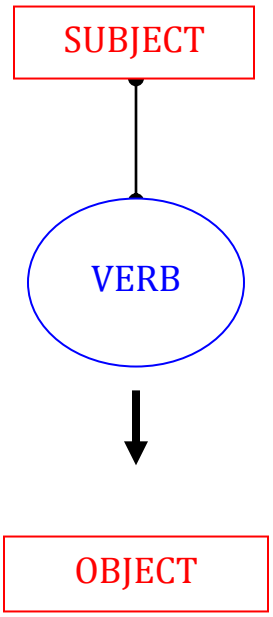
Key Items (chapters)

Noun Items

- case, number, gender (#15-20)
- articles (#25)
- pronouns (#26-27)

Modifiers of Nouns

- adjectives (#21)
- relative clauses (#22)
- attributive participles (#23)
- descriptive genitives (#24)



Verb Items

- tense (#4-8)
- mood (#29-30)
- voice (#28)

Modifiers of Verbs

- adverbs (#9)
- infinitives (#10)
- adverbial clauses (#13)
- adverbial participles (#12)
- prepositional phrases (#14)
- adverbial datives (#17)

- Conjunctions (#35-37)
- Conditionals (#38-40)

Introduction

This course has a double purpose. One is to learn how to read and understand the Greek language as it was written at the time of the New Testament. The other is to learn how to use this knowledge of the Greek language in interpreting the books of the New Testament.

However, there is more to interpreting the New Testament than just knowing Greek. Interpreting the New Testament includes knowing the historical setting for each book. Knowledge of the historical setting includes knowledge of the author, the people to whom the book was written and their culture, and also the background and purpose of the book, etc.

Interpreting the New Testament also includes knowing the scriptural setting. We allow Scripture to interpret Scripture by using the immediate and wider context, the unity of Scripture, and other principles.

And finally, to interpret the New Testament we must learn how to use what we know about the Greek language, that is, the grammatical setting. The grammatical setting includes word meanings, syntax, genre of literature, figurative language, literary devices, and others. This course will concentrate on the grammatical setting, especially word meanings and syntax. The historical setting, the scriptural setting, and the other aspects of the grammatical setting (including the proper use of each in interpretation) are taught in a separate course.

This course has been designed to carry out this double purpose. In each lesson of the course you will learn a new fact about an important element of the Greek language (grammar). At the same time as you learn each fact of grammar, you will also learn what each element of the Greek language contributes to the meaning of a New Testament passage.

For example: Jesus' statement on the cross, "It is finished!" (John 19:30) is just one word in Greek. It is a word that is in the perfect tense. Grammatical fact: the perfect tense in Greek indicates an action that was completed with a continuing result. This means that the action Jesus completed was the work of salvation that his Father sent him to do. This completed work has the continuing result that the sins of each new generation of people in this world are continually forgiven.

In addition to grammatical facts there will be many things for you to memorize such as the Greek alphabet, word forms, word meanings and so on. Memorizing some basic things is important. If you know things that occur again and again by memory you will save a lot of time. Otherwise, you would have to spent time looking these things up over and over again. There are also easy-to-use helps available on computer programs. These helps have reduced the need to memorize many things that students in the past had to commit to memory. Doing faithful memory work and learning how to use the available computer helps will be very important parts of this course.

Learning biblical Greek will be a challenge. But don't give up just because it all seems so strange at the beginning. Work faithfully at each lesson. As you add one element of the Greek language to the next, you will find each new element helping you understand better what you learned earlier.

It is like looking at a picture. When you see just part of a picture at first, it may not be clear to you what that picture is about. As you see more and more of the picture, however, you also understand each part of the whole picture better.

Your goal is to be able to read and understand God's inspired Word more fully. What you will learn in this course will help you do just that. It will also be an important tool you can use in bringing the saving good news of Jesus to many other people.

Lesson One

Unit A. Introductory Lessons

Lesson 1 **Greek Alphabet, Diphthongs, Syllabification**
Lesson 2 Accents, Apostrophe and Breathing Marks, Punctuation
Lesson 3 Sentence Structure: Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Nouns, Adjectives

A. Greek Alphabet

1. The sounds of the Greek language are represented by letters. The first step in learning Greek is to memorize the letters and how to pronounce each letter. (N.B. Greek also has capital letters. See Appendix B, page 252.)
2. The Greek alphabet has 24 letters. It may help if you memorize them in groups as they are listed below. The underlined letter in each name of a letter is the parallel letter(s) in English.

3.

α	alpha	ν	nu
β	beta	ξ	xi
γ	gamma	ο	omicron
δ	delta	π	pi
ε	epsilon	ρ	rho
ζ	zeta	σ, ς	sigma
η	eta	τ	tau
θ	theta	υ	upsilon
ι	iota	φ	phi
κ	kappa	χ	chi
λ	lambda	ψ	psi
μ	mu	ω	omega

4. Note that nine of the letters look like the parallel English letter (α, β, δ, ε, ι, κ, ο, τ, υ), while the rest are formed differently.

5. There are two sigmas: σ and ς (N.B. σ is used when this letter is at the beginning or in the middle of a word = σωζω, εστιν; ςis used when this letter is at the end of a word = θεος).
6. There are seven vowels: α, ε, η, ι, ο, υ, ω.

B. Diphthongs

1. In addition to the seven vowels listed above in the alphabet, Greek has a number of additional vowel sounds. These vowel sounds are called diphthongs because they are represented by two vowels together - either iota (ιor upsilon (υ) right after one of the other Greek vowels.

αι	pronounced "i" as in idea
ει	pronounced "i" as in idea
οι	pronounced "oi" as in oil
υι	pronounced "whe" as in wheat

N.B. Sometimes the letter iota in a diphthong will be written in a very small size underneath the first vowel in the diphthong. Some examples: ᾳ, ῃ, ῳ.

αυ	pronounced "ou" as in ouch
ευ	pronounced "oi" as in oil
ηυ	pronounced "oi" as in oil
ου	pronounced "ou" as in soup

2. Note that several of the diphthongs are pronounced the same way.
3. No one knows for sure how the letters of the alphabet or the diphthongs were pronounced at Jesus' time. Therefore, different courses may suggest a slightly different way to pronounce some of them.

C. Syllables

1. In addition to knowing how to pronounce the letters and diphthongs, it is also important to know how to pronounce words.
2. To make it easy to pronounce words, we break them into parts called syllables.
3. The basic rule is to make a break after each vowel or diphthong:
Romans 1:17 δε δικαιος ζησεται εκ πιστεως is read like this:

δε	δι-και-ος	ζη-σε-ται	εκ	πισ-τε-ως
and	(the) righteous	will live	by	faith

4. When there are two vowels together that are not a diphthong, break between the vowels:
θεος (which means "God") is read like this: θε-ος

5. When two letters are together that are not vowels, break between these two letters: βαλλω (which means “throw”) is read like this: βαλ-λω and πιστεως (“faith”) is read like this: πισ-τε-ως.

D. Vocabulary

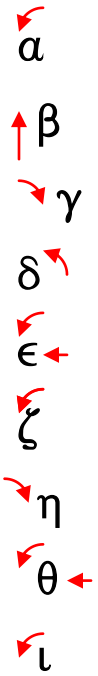
The underlining indicates the syllable that receives the accent.

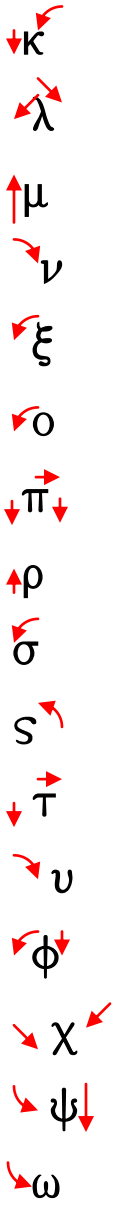
ακουω	I hear	λαμβανω	I take
βλεπω	I see	γραφω	I write
εχω	I have	σωζω	I save
πιστευω	I believe	βασιλευω	I rule
θελω	I wish or I want		

Exercises – Lesson 1

1. Memorize the Greek alphabet so that:
   - You can recite the alphabet without stopping; and
   - You can recognize each letter and explain how it sounds.

2. Write each of the letters six times (the red arrow shows how to start each letter and how to make any necessary additional strokes):





3. Circle the seven vowels in the list above.

4. Write the four diphthongs that are formed by adding iota:

5. Write the four diphthongs that are formed by adding upsilon.

6. Without looking back at the lesson, write these words by breaking them into syllables:

δικαιος
ζησεται
πιστεως
θεος
βαλλω

Now look back at the lesson under C and check your answers.

7. Memorize the meaning of the words listed under D in the lesson. These are words that are used over and over again in the New Testament.

Lesson Two

Unit A. Introductory Lessons

Lesson 1 Greek Alphabet, Diphthongs, Syllabification
Lesson 2 Accents, Apostrophe and Breathing Marks, Punctuation
Lesson 3 Sentence Structure: Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Nouns, Adjectives

A. Accents

1. Most Greek words, as they appear in the New Testament texts we use, also have accents.
2. An accent is a mark above one syllable in each word (above the vowel in that syllable). This mark tells you to give a little more emphasis to this syllable when you pronounce that word.
3. The acute accent is a small line above a vowel that slants to the left (´). The grave accent is a small line above a vowel that slants to the right (`).
4. The grave accent (`) is used when the last syllable in a word gets the accent. The acute accent (´) is used mostly when any syllable other than the last one gets the accent.
5. Note the accents in these words from Romans 1:17:

δὲ	δίκαιος	ζήσεται	ἐκ	πίστεως
and	(the) righteous	will live	by	faith

6. Note that one word, ἐκ, does not have an accent. Some short words like ἐκ that have only one syllable do not have an accent. Other short words with only one syllable do have accents, such as δὲ above.
7. The other type of accent in Greek is a circumflex (ˆ). It is a little curved line above a vowel (usually an ω, η, or a diphthong). Here is an example from Romans 1:18:

ὀργὴ	θεοῦ	ἀπ’	οὐρανοῦ
anger	of God	from	heaven

8. Note that the accent over a diphthong goes above the second vowel in the diphthong (i.e. over the upsilon in both θεοῦ and οὐρανοῦ).

B. Apostrophe and Breathing Marks

1. Sometimes when a Greek word ends with a vowel, and the next word begins with a vowel or diphthong, the vowel drops out.
2. When this happens, a mark like an apostrophe (’) is used to mark the place where the vowel disappeared.
3. You have an example of this above in 7 in the Romans 1:18 passage. The word really is ἀπό, but the omicron is dropped and an apostrophe takes its place.

4. Note that the accent on the omicron (ἀπό) also is dropped when the omicron disappears.
5. Marks like apostrophes are also used when a word in Greek begins with a vowel or diphthong. Some examples would be Greek words like ἐν (which means "in") and εἰς ("into").
6. Note that the apostrophe mark goes over the second vowel of a diphthong as in εἰς.
7. When an apostrophe mark appears over a vowel or diphthong at the beginning of a word, it is called a breathing mark.
8. When the breathing mark at the beginning of a word is like an apostrophe, it does not change how you pronounce the word.
9. When the breathing mark is like a backward apostrophe (῾), however, it indicates that you are to put an "h" sound in front of the vowel at the beginning of that word. For example, ὑπὲρ(which means "above") is pronounced "huper."

C. Punctuation

1. The Greek New Testament text has four punctuation marks.
2. The four marks are: , . · ;
3. The first two, a comma and a period, are the same as in English. The comma marks off part of a sentence, and a period marks the end of a sentence.
4. The last two are different from English. In Greek, the dot above the line is like a semicolon in English. It divides a sentence into two parts.
5. The dot above the line with a comma below (like a semicolon in English) is a question mark in Greek.

D. Vocabulary

The words from Lesson One are repeated with the proper markings.

ἀκούω	I hear	λαμβάνω	I take
βλέπω	I see	γράφω	I write
ἔχω	I have	σώζω	I save
πιστεύω	I believe	βασιλεύω	I rule
θέλω	I wish or I want		

Exercises – Lesson 2

1. The following is Romans 3:19-20 with the words slightly rearranged from the Greek text and a word-for-word translation under each line. Follow along with the reading of the text on the video. Then read it aloud, making sure you accent each word correctly and break each word into syllables properly.

19

δὲ	οἴδαμεν	ὅτι	ὅσα	ὁ	νόμος	λέγει
and	we know	that	what	the	law	says

λαλεῖ	τοῖς	ἐν	τῷ	νόμῳ
it speaks	to those	in	the	law

ἵνα	πᾶν	στόμα	φραγῇ
so that	every	mouth	would be shut

καὶ	πᾶς	ὁ	κόσμος	γένηται	ὑπόδικος	τῷ θεῷ·
and	whole	the	world	would be	under judgment	by God

20

διότι	ἐξ	ἔργων	νόμου	πᾶσα	σὰρξ
because	by	deeds	of the law	every	flesh

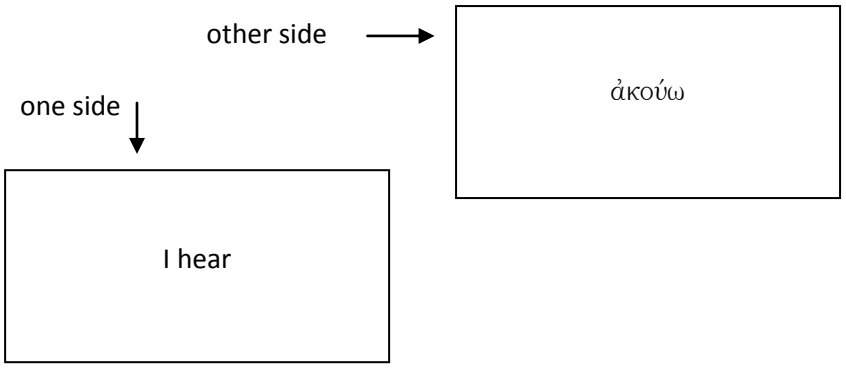
οὐ	δικαιωθήσεται	ἐνώπιον	αὐτοῦ
not	will be acquitted	before	him

γὰρ	διὰ	νόμου	ἐπίγνωσις	ἁμαρτίας.
for	by	law	knowledge	of sin

2. Note that the accent used most often is the acute accent. There are, however, five grave accents. Put a check mark (√) behind these five words.
3. Circle the ten circumflex accents.
4. There are seven breathing marks that require adding an "h" sound at the beginning of these words. Put a square (□) around the beginning of each of these words.
5. There is one period marking the end of a sentence. Make an arrow (◄——) pointing to these periods.
6. There is one mark like a semicolon at the end of a sentence. Also make an arrow (◄——) pointing to this mark.
7. Memorize the vocables (and their markings) listed under "vocabulary" in this lesson. Since these vocables will need to be reviewed again and again, start putting them on vocable slips with the Greek word on one side of the slip and the English on the other side (see the example below).

Cut slips of paper about the size of the boxes below, and put each vocable on a separate slip.

Example:



Go through the slips of paper looking at the Greek side and give the English meaning without looking at the other side, if possible. Then go through the slips again looking at the English side and give the Greek word without looking at the other side, if possible. After doing this a couple times, put those slips aside that you knew without looking at the other side. The idea is that if you know some vocables without looking at the other side, you don't need to spend time on those words any more that day. Instead, spend your time going through those words that you can't remember without looking.

After you go through all the slips without looking, put them back into one pile. Keep reviewing all the slips at least once each day. Repetition is the only way you will be able to make these words part of your memory. Each lesson in this course will add more vocables. These will be vocables that appear many times in the New Testament. Knowing these words that appear on almost every page of the New Testament will make your work of reading and interpreting the New Testament much easier as a pastor.

Lesson Three

Unit A. Introductory Lessons

Lesson 1 Greek Alphabet, Diphthongs, Syllabification
Lesson 2 Accents, Apostrophe and Breathing Marks, Punctuation
Lesson 3 Sentence Structure: Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Nouns, Adjectives

A. Sentence Structure

1. A sentence is the basic unit of writing in the Greek language (as it is also in English).
2. A sentence is a group of words that states a complete thought.
3. A sentence can be just two words. For example:

Ἰησοῦς	ἀπέθανεν.
Jesus	died

4. A sentence can also be many words.

Example:

Ἰησοῦς	ἀγαπητὸς	υἱός	θεοῦ	ἀπέθανεν	παθὼν
Jesus	beloved	Son	of God	died	suffering

ἐν	σταυρῷ	ξυλίνῳ	ἀπολαβεῖν	πάσας	ἁμαρτίας
on	a cross	wooden	to take away	all	sins

ἵνα	ζῶμεν	σύν	θεῷ	ἐν	οὐρανοῦ.
so that	we would live	with	God	in	heaven

5. The long sentence includes the two words of the short sentence. It also adds many more words that describe (modify) those two words in different ways.
6. It is clear that the longer sentence says much more than the short sentence. The Greeks tended to write in long sentences, so there are many long sentences in the New Testament. This is true especially in the letters written by Paul and Peter.
7. It is necessary for you to learn how the parts of a sentence fit together in order to read the Greek of the New Testament.
8. The two key words in both sentences above are the main subject and the main verb.
9. “Jesus” is the main subject of both sentences. The main subject is the main person (or thing) in the sentence.
10. “Died” is the main verb in both sentences above. The main verb states the main action of the main subject (main person or thing).

B. Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions

1. In A, 10 above, we said that "died" is the main verb in the sentence.
2. We called it the main verb because there are also two other verbs in the long sentence: ἀπολαβεῖν ("take away") and ζῶμεν ("live").
3. All three of these verbs are action words. That is, they tell us three things that someone did: "Jesus died," "Jesus took away," and "we live." A verb is an action word that tells us what a person (or thing) does.
4. An adverb is a word or words that describe (modify) the action of a verb. An adverb will describe such things as when, where, why, and how the action of a verb took place.
5. The verb "died" has four adverbs that modify it:
   a. "Suffering" describes what Jesus was doing while he died.
   b. "On a cross" describes where Jesus died.
   c. "To take away the sins of the world" describes why Jesus died.
   d. "So that we would live with him in heaven" describes what Jesus wanted to happen by his death.
6. Note that the first of these adverbs is just one word ("suffering"), but the second is several words (a phrase): "on a cross."
7. A phrase such as "on a cross" is called a prepositional phrase because it begins with a preposition.
8. Prepositions are words (in, into, on, by, from, with, etc.) that begin a short phrase that is almost always an adverb (modifies a verb).
9. The last two adverbs ("to take away the sins of the world" and "so that we would live with him in heaven") are longer kinds of adverbs that we will discuss later in this course.
10. Note that the verb "live" in the fourth adverb is modified by two more prepositional phrases that also are adverbs: "with him" (whom we will live with) and "in heaven" (where we will live).
11. Summary:
    a. One of the key words in a sentence is the main verb.
    b. There can be more than one verb in a sentence, but only one is the main verb.
    c. Any of the verbs in a sentence can have adverbs describing (modifying) them.

C. Nouns, Adjectives

1. In the example sentences above, we said that "Jesus" is the main subject of both sentences.
2. The subject of the sentence is the person or a thing (noun) that did the action of the main verb.
3. There are also other nouns (persons, things) in this sentence: Son, God, cross, sins, world, heaven.
4. One of these nouns, "sins", tells what Jesus took away when he died. Since the action of the verb "take away" happened directly to "sins," we call this noun the direct object of the verb "take away."
5. Nouns can therefore be either the subject or object of a verb.
   a. Subject = doer of the action of a verb
   b. Object = receiver of the action of a verb
6. An adjective is a word that describes (modifies) a noun.
7. Note that three of the nouns have adjectives that describe (modify) them:
   a. "Beloved" describes God's attitude toward Jesus.
   b. "Wooden" describes what Jesus' cross was made of.
   c. "All" describes how many sins Jesus took away.

8. Summary:

a. One of the key words in a sentence is the main subject (the doer of the action) of the main verb.

b. There can be other nouns in a sentence, but only one is the main subject.

c. Any of the nouns in a sentence can have an adjective describing (modifying) them.

D. Diagram

1. We noted in parts B and C of this chapter that the most common parts of a sentence are the main subject, the main verb, and the object of the main verb if there is one. There also may be other verbs in the sentence that may have adverbs modifying them. There may be other nouns that have adjectives modifying them.

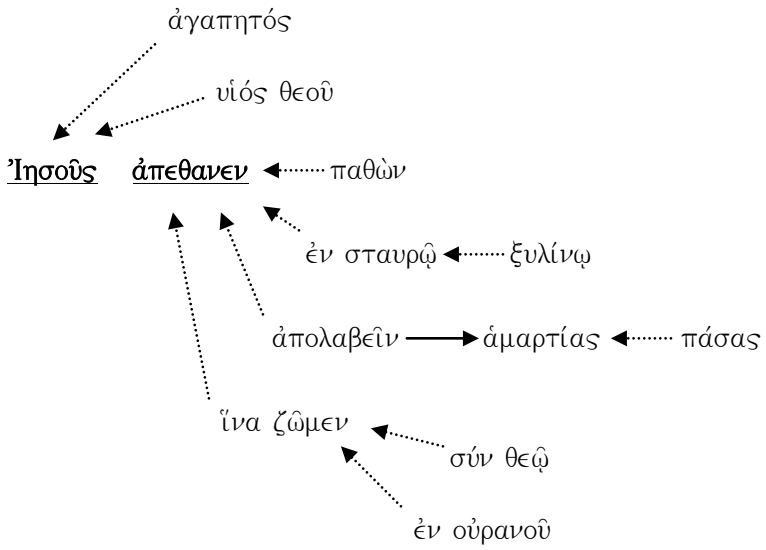
2. Making a diagram of a sentence is like making a chart that shows what each word in a sentence is doing.

3. The main verb and the main subject are put in bold type and underlined.

4. A direct object has an arrow (⟶) pointing to it from the verb whose action the object is receiving.

5. An adverb or adjective has a dotted arrow (⋯▸) pointing from it to the verb or noun it modifies.

6. Using these markings, the long sentence would be diagrammed this way:



7. A diagram like this helps us realize how many words in a sentence are adverbs or adjectives that modify the nouns and verbs in a sentence. Note all the dotted arrows.
8. Each modifier adds meaning to a noun or verb. Good Bible interpretation explains all the meaning there is in all the words of a sentence.
9. Often the modifiers in a sentence are important in learning doctrinal truths.
10. For example, the adjective "all" modifying "sins" tells us that Jesus did not take away just some of our sins. He took all of them away. That means we have forgiveness for all our sins.
11. Also, the adverbs "with God" and "in heaven" tell us that after we die we won't be floating around somewhere in space. Rather, we know exactly where we will be. We will be living with God himself in the home he made for us in heaven.

E. Vocabulary

ἀγαπάω	I love	ἁμαρτάνω	I sin
ἄγω	I bring	ἀποκτείνω	I kill
αἰτέω	I ask	ἀσθενέω	I am weak / I am sick

Exercises – Lesson 3

A. Review

1. Practice reading Greek by reading the long sentence in this lesson three times. Make sure you accent each word right and break each word into syllables properly.

Ἰησοῦς	ἀγαπητὸς	υἱὸς	θεοῦ	ἀπέθανεν	παθὼν
Jesus	loved	Son	of God	died	suffering

ἐν	σταυρῷ	ξυλίνῳ	ἀπολαβεῖν	πάσας	ἁμαρτίας
on	a cross	wood	to take away	all	sins

ἵνα	ζῶμεν	σύν	θεῷ	ἐν	οὐρανοῦ.
so that	we would live	with	God	in	heaven

2. Put an arrow pointing down (↓) to each of the six acute accents.
3. Put a checkmark (√) after each of the three grave accents.
4. Circle each of the seven circumflex accents.
5. Most of the breathing marks do not make a difference in pronunciation. But there are three breathing marks that require adding an "h" sound at the beginning of these words. Put a square (□) around the beginning of each of these words.

B. Analyzing the Parts of a Sentence

1. Read through each of these sentences. Then do the exercises that follow each sentence. (Note that the underlining indicates a separate part of each of the sentences.)

a. **Jesus our Savior rose from the dead early in the morning.**

- Which noun is the subject of the sentence?

- Explain (Why did you say this noun is the subject?):

- Which word is the verb?

- Explain (Why did you say this word is the verb?):

- The words "our Savior" are an adjective. Explain (Why are these words an adjective?):

- The words "from the dead" are an adverb. Explain (Why are these words an adverb?):

- The word "early" is an adverb. Explain:

- The words "in the morning" are an adverb. Explain:

b. **An angel from God moved the stone from the tomb.**

- Which word is the subject of the sentence?

- The words "from God" are an adjective. Explain:

- Which word is the verb?

- The words "the stone" are the object of the verb. Explain:

- The words "from the tomb" are an adverb. Explain:

c. **The soldiers at the tomb ran away because they were afraid.**

- Which word is the subject of the sentence?

- The words "at the tomb" are an adjective. Explain:

- Which word is the verb?

- The word "away" is an adverb. Explain:

- The words "because they were afraid" are an adverb. Explain:

d. **Jesus went into Jerusalem.**

- What part of the sentence is the noun "Jesus?" Explain:

- What part of the sentence is the word "went?" Explain:

- What kind of modifier (adjective or adverb) is “into Jerusalem?” Explain:

e. **The disciples who had followed Jesus were hiding in a house.**

- What part of the sentence are the words “the disciples?” Explain:

- What kind of modifier (adjective or adverb) are the words “who had followed Jesus?” Explain:

- What part of the sentence are the words “were hiding?” Explain:

- What kind of modifier are the words “in a house?” Explain:

f. **Jesus came to them.** and g. **Jesus showed himself to them.**

- Tell what part of the sentence each of these items is in these two sentences and explain why you said that. Question ii is done for you as an example.

  i. “Jesus” =
  Explain:
  ii. “came” = Main Verb.
  Explain: It is the action done by the subject.
  iii. “to them” =
  Explain:
  iv. “Jesus” =
  Explain:
  v. “showed” =
  Explain:
  vi. “himself” =
  Explain:
  vii. “to them” =
  Explain:

h. **Then the disciples felt very happy.**

- The word “then” is an adverb. Explain:

- The words “the disciples” are the subject. Explain:

- The word “felt” is the verb. Explain:

- The words “very happy” are an adverb. Explain:

C. Memory Work

1. Use your vocable cards to review the vocables from the last two lessons.
2. Make vocable cards for the new words in Part E of this lesson and memorize them.

Lesson Four

Unit B. Verb Tenses

Lesson 4 **Present Tense**
Lesson 5 Imperfect Tense
Lesson 6 Future Tense
Lesson 7 Aorist Tense
Lesson 8 Perfect Tense

A. Verb Tense and Number

1. As we learned in Chapter 3, the main verb in a sentence expresses the main action in a sentence. (Cf. the chart on page 4 also.)
2. In Greek, the verb not only expresses the main action but also:
   a. The kind of action (for example, either ongoing = "Jesus is watching over us," or completed action = "Jesus died");
   b. The time of the action (at the present time, in past time, or in the future); and
   c. The person who is doing or who did the action:
      - either one person (singular) = I, you, he, she, it.
      - or more than one person (plural) = we, you, they.
3. The basic verb (called "the stem") gives the basic meaning. For example, the stem θελ- expresses the action of wishing or wanting.
4. Then endings are added to the stem to express all the things listed under #2 above (that is, the kind of action, the time of the action, and the person).
5. It is the stem and these endings (and their meanings) that we will be focusing on in this part (Unit B) of this course.
6. There are five major kinds and times of action expressed by Greek verbs that we will learn in Unit B. We refer to these five major categories as tenses: present tense, imperfect tense, future tense, aorist tense, and perfect tense.
   N.B. Two other tenses that are used only a few times in the New Testament are the pluperfect and future perfect tenses.

B. Present Tense

1. When a verb form (stem + ending) indicates it is a present tense, then the author is indicating that he is talking about an action that is ongoing at the present time.
2. How do we know when a verb is present tense? We know this when the verb form is the stem of the verb plus the endings for the present tense. For example: the word θέλω is the stem θελ- ("want")

and the ending -ω ("I"). Therefore, the word θέλω tells us that the biblical author is saying, "I continually want something at the present time."

3. We can tell the present tense apart from the other tenses we will study in Unit B by the stem or the ending. Verbs in the other tenses will either have a different stem or different endings.
4. The endings to add to the stem for the present tense are these:

-ω	1st person singular	θύω	"I sacrifice"
-εις	2nd person singular	θύεις	"You sacrifice"
-ει	3rd person singular	θύει	"He, she, or it sacrifices"
-ομεν	1st person plural	θύομεν	"We sacrifice"
-ετε	2nd person plural	θύετε	"You (plural) sacrifice"
-ουσι	3rd person plural	θύουσι	"They sacrifice"

5. Note that the endings make it easy for us to understand who is doing the action.
6. To distinguish between the persons indicated by these endings, we refer to 1st, 2nd, and 3rd persons in either the singular (one person) or plural (more than one person).

C. Vocabulary

ἁρπάζω	I seize	αὐξάνω	I grow or increase
ἄρχω	I rule	βάλλω	I throw
ἀτιμάζω	I dishonor	βαπτίζω	I immerse or wash

Exercises – Chapter 4

A. Analyzing Forms and Vocable Review

- Fill in the boxes following each word using the example given as a model. You should know how to translate each verb, since you have memorized the meaning of all these verbs.

Greek Word	Stem	Ending	Person	Number	Translation
ἄγουσι	αγ	ουσι	3rd	pl	they lead, or they are leading
θέλω					
ἀκούετε					
ἁμαρτάνει					
ἀποκτείνεις					
ἁρπάζομεν					
ἄρχω					
ἀτιμάζομεν					
αὐξάνεις					
βάλλει					
βασιλεύουσι					
βλέπετε					

Greek Word	Stem	Ending	Person	Number	Translation
γράφει					

B. Conjugating Verbs in the Present Tense

- To conjugate a verb means to give all the forms of a verb in a certain tense.
- Conjugate each of the verbs by filling in the blanks for the rest of the forms of the present tense of each verb.

1st sg	ἄρχω				
2nd sg		αὐξάνεις			
3rd sg			γράφει		
1st pl				ἁρπάζομεν	
2nd pl					βλέπετε
3rd pl					

C. Translating Present Tense Verbs in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined verb in each of these adapted Bible passages.
- Write the translation under the verb in each sentence.

1. John 8:49

τιμῶ	τὸν	πατέρα	μου,	καὶ	**ἀτιμάζετέ**	με.
I honor	the	father	of me,	and		me.

2. Romans 2:23

διὰ	τῆς	παραβάσεως	τοῦ	νόμου	**ἀτιμάζεις**	τὸν θεὸν.
By	this	disobeying	the	law		God.

3. John 8:3

δὲ	οἱ	γραμματεῖς	καὶ	οἱ	Φαρισαῖοι	**ἄγουσιν**	γυναῖκα	Ἰησου.
And	the	scribes	and	the	Pharisees		the woman	to Jesus.

4. John 19:4

ὁ Πιλᾶτος	λέγει	αὐτοις,	Ἴδε	**ἄγω**	αὐτον	ἔξω	ὑμῖν.	
Pilate	says	to them,	"Look		him	out	to you."	

5. Matthew 7:26

πᾶς	ὅστις	**ἀκούει**	τούτους	λόγους	μου	καὶ	ποιεῖ	αὐτούς...
Everyone	who		these	words	of me	and	does	them...

6. Acts 2:8

πῶς	ἀκούομεν	ἕκαστος	τῇ ἰδίᾳ	διαλέκτῳ;
How		each	in his own	dialect?

D. Memory Work

1. Memorize the endings of the verb in the present tense.
2. Use your vocable cards to review the vocables from the previous lessons.
3. Make vocable cards for the new words in Part C of this lesson and memorize them.

Lesson Five

Unit B. Verb Tenses

Lesson 4	Present Tense
Lesson 5	**Imperfect Tense**
Lesson 6	Future Tense
Lesson 7	Aorist Tense
Lesson 8	Perfect Tense

A. Imperfect Tense Meaning and Forms

1. The present tense expresses ongoing action in the present time. The imperfect tense also expresses ongoing action, but ongoing action in past time.
2. The verb stem in the imperfect tense is the same as the stem for the present tense. The endings for the imperfect tense are partly similar to those of the present tense. Two endings are actually the same as the present tense: 1st person plural and 2nd person plural.
3. What sets the imperfect apart from the present is the letter epsilon placed at the beginning of each of the forms. This letter at the beginning of each form is called an "augment."
4. So the imperfect forms are a combination of the augment + the present stem + the imperfect endings. Like this:

ἐ +	stem +	ον	(1st person singular)	= ἔθυον	"I was sacrificing"
ἐ +	stem +	ες	(2nd person singular)	= ἔθυες	"You (sg) were sacrificing"
ἐ +	stem +	ε	(3rd person singular)	= ἔθυε	"He, she, it was sacrificing"
ἐ +	stem +	ομεν	(1st person plural)	= ἐθύομεν	"We were sacrificing"
ἐ +	stem +	ετε	(2nd person plural)	= ἐθύετε	"You (pl) were sacrificing"
ἐ +	stem +	ον	(3rd person plural)	= ἔθυον	"They were sacrificing"

5. Note that the endings for the first person singular and 3rd person plural are the same (-ον). You will be able to figure out which one of the two is meant in a sentence by the other words in the sentence. Does the context indicate that only one person did this ongoing action in the past, or was it a number of people?

B. Vocabulary

διδάσκω	I teach	δοξάζω	I glorify or honor
διώκω	I pursue or persecute	δουλεύω	I serve
δοκιμάζω	I test or approve	ἐγείρω	I raise

Exercises - Chapter 5

A. Analyzing Imperfect Tense Forms and Vocable Review

- Fill in the blanks following each word using the example given as a model.
- Each verb is one whose meaning you have memorized.

Greek word	Stem	Ending	Person	Number	Translation
ἐβάλλετε	βαλλ	ετε	2nd	Plural	"you were throwing"
ἔγραφον					
ἐβαπτίζον					
ἔβλεπε					
ἐβασιλεύομεν					
ἐβάπτιζες					
ἐβλέπομεν					
ἐβασίλευον					
ἐγράφετε					
ἔβαλλες					
ἐβάπτιζε					
ἔβλεπον					

B. Conjugating

- Conjugate each of these verbs by filling in the blanks with the rest of the forms of each of the verbs in the imperfect tense.

1st sg					
2nd sg	ἐβασίλευες				
3rd sg		ἔγραφε			
1st pl			ἐβάλλομεν		
2nd pl				ἐβλέπετε	
3rd pl					ἔθελον

C. Translating Imperfect Tense Verbs in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined verb in each of these Bible passages.
- Write the translation under the verb in each sentence.

1. Mark 12:41

πολλοὶ	πλούσιοι	ἔβαλλον	πολλά.
Many	rich people		much.

2. John 3:22

ἐκεῖ	διέτριβεν	μετ’	αὐτῶν	καὶ	ἐβάπτιζε.
There	he spent time	with	them	and	

3. Acts 9:8

Σαῦλος	ἠγέρθη	ἀπὸ	τῆς	γῆς	δὲ	ἔβλεπεν	οὐδέν.
Saul	got up	from	the	ground	but		nothing.

4. Acts 22:11

ὡς	οὐκ	ἔβλεπον	χειραγωγούμενος	ὑπὸ	τῶν	συνόντων.
“Since	not		I was led by the hand	by	my	companions.”

D. Recognizing Forms of Different Tenses

- Identify these forms by giving the person, number, whether it is present or imperfect tense, and a translation.

Form	Person	Number	Tense	Translation
βλέπομεν				
ἐβασίλευε				
βάλλετε				
ἔγραφες				
ἐβάπτιζον				
θέλουσι				
ἀτιμάζει				
ἁμαρτάνεις				
ἐθύομεν				
ἔβαλλε				

E. Memory Work

1. Memorize the endings of the verb in the imperfect tense.
2. Use your vocable cards to review the vocables from the previous lessons.
3. Make vocable cards for the new words in Part B of this lesson and memorize them.

Lesson Six

Unit B. Verb Tenses

Lesson 4	Present Tense
Lesson 5	Imperfect Tense
Lesson 6	**Future Tense**
Lesson 7	Aorist Tense
Lesson 8	Perfect Tense

A. Future Tense Meaning and Forms

1. The future tense indicates action that will take place at some time in the future.
2. The stem for the future tense forms is usually the same as the stem for the present and imperfect tenses.
3. The endings for the future tense forms are the same as those for the present tense.
4. What sets the future tense apart from the other tenses is the letter sigma that is inserted between the stem and the endings.
5. When the sigma added after the stem is hard to pronounce, the stem changes slightly. For example: the verb γράφω has the future stem γραψ- instead of γραφσ-, the verb διδάσκω has the future stem διδαξ- instead of διδασκσ-, and the verb θέλω has the future stem θελησ- instead of θελσ-.
6. The future tense forms are a combination of the present stem + sigma + the endings of the present tense. Like this:

stem +	σ	ω	(1st person singular)	= θύσω	"I will sacrifice"
stem +	σ	εις	(2nd person singular)	= θύσεις	"You (sg) will sacrifice"
stem +	σ	ει	(3rd person singular)	= θύσει	"He, she, it will sacrifice"
stem +	σ	ομεν	(1st person plural)	= θύσομεν	"We will sacrifice"
stem +	σ	ετε	(2nd person plural)	= θύσετε	"You (pl) will sacrifice"
stem +	σ	ουσι	(3rd person plural)	= θύσουσι	"They will sacrifice"

B. Vocabulary

ἐλευθερόω	I set free	εὐαγγελίζω	I tell good news
ἐλπίζω	I hope	θανατάω	I put to death
ἐπιθυμέω	I desire	θαυμάζω	I am amazed

Exercises – Chapter 6

A. Analyzing Future Tense Forms and Vocable Review

- Fill in the blanks following each word using the example given as a model. Each verb is one whose meaning you have memorized.

Greek Word	Stem	Ending	Person	Number	Translation
βασιλεύσουσι	βασιλευ	σουσι	3rd	plural	"they will rule"
δουλεύσει					
ἀκούσομεν					
πιστεύσω					
δουλεύσεις					
βασιλεύσετε					
ἀκούσω					
δουλεύσετε					
πιστεύσουσι					
ἀκούσει					
βασιλεύσεις					
πιστεύσομεν					

B. Conjugating

- Conjugate each of these verbs by filling in the blanks with the rest of the forms of each of these verbs in the future tense.

1st sg				
2nd sg	βασιλεύσεις			
3rd sg		πιστεύσει		
1st pl			ἀκούσομεν	
2nd pl				δουλεύσετε
3rd pl				

C. Translating Future Tense Verbs in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined verb in each of these Bible passages.
- Write the translation under the verb in each sentence.

1. Matthew 12:19

οὐδὲ τις ἀκούσει ἐν ταῖς πλατείαις τὴν φωνὴν αὐτοῦ.

And no one in the streets the voice of him.

2. Matthew 13:14

ἀκοῇ ἀκούσετε καὶ οὐ μὴ συνῆτε.

By listening but not at all will you understand.

3. John 5:25

οἱ	νεκροὶ	ἀκούσουσιν	τῆς	φωνῆς	τοῦ	υἱοῦ	τοῦ	θεοῦ.
The	dead		the	voice	of the	Son	of	God.

4. Luke 1:33

καὶ	βασιλεύσει	ἐπὶ	τὸν	οἶκον	Ἰακὼβ	εἰς	τοὺς	αἰῶνας
And		over	the	house	of Jacob	until	the	ages (forever).

5. Acts 7:7

το ἔθνος	ᾧ ἐὰν	δουλεύσουσιν	ἐγώ	κρινῶ,	ὁ θεὸς	εἶπεν.
The nation	which		I	will judge,	God	says.

6. Matthew 27:42

καταβάτω	νῦν	ἀπὸ	τοῦ	σταυροῦ	καὶ	πιστεύσομεν	ἐπ’	αὐτόν.
Come down	now	from	the	cross	and		on	him.

D. Recognizing Forms of Different Tenses

- Identify these forms by giving the following: whether it is present, imperfect, or future tense; the person; number; and a translation.

Form	Tense	Person	Number	Translation
δοκιμάζεις				
δουλεύσετε				
δοξάζομεν				
ἐδίωκον				
ἀκούσω				
ἐδίδασκες				
ἐγείρουσι				
ἔγραφε				

E. Memory Work

1. Use your vocable cards to review the vocables from the previous lessons.
2. Make vocable cards for the new words in Part B of this lesson and memorize them.

Lesson Seven

Unit B. Verb Tenses

Lesson 4	Present Tense
Lesson 5	Imperfect Tense
Lesson 6	Future Tense
Lesson 7	**Aorist Tense**
Lesson 8	Perfect Tense

A. Meaning and Forms

1. The aorist tense indicates action that has happened.
2. In the portions of the New Testament that are historical, the aorist is a very common verb tense. It simply indicates that what happened is a fact.
3. Some books say that the aorist indicates a one-time happening. Often that is true, but there are so many exceptions to this statement that it is not a good rule for doing interpretation of the New Testament.
4. The stem (cf. underlining) for the aorist tense can be:
   a. The same as the stem for the present tense (θύω, ἔθυσα),
   b. The same as the stem for the future tense (διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα)
   c. Or it may be slightly different (λαμβάνω, ἔλαβον)
5. The aorist tense usually has an augment placed in front of the stem (like the imperfect).
6. What distinguishes the aorist tense from the other tenses are the letters sigma and alpha in the ending of all the aorist forms except the 3rd singular.
7. So the aorist tense forms are a combination of the augment + the aorist stem + the endings of the aorist tense. Like this:

ἐ +	stem +	σα	(1st person singular)	= ἔθυσα	"I sacrificed"
ἐ +	stem +	σας	(2nd person singular)	= ἔθυσας	"You (sg) sacrificed"
ἐ +	stem +	σε	(3rd person singular)	= ἔθυσε	"He/she/it sacrificed"
ἐ +	stem +	σαμεν	(1st person plural)	= ἐθύσαμεν	"We sacrificed"
ἐ +	stem +	σατε	(2nd person plural)	= ἐθύσατε	"You (pl) sacrificed"
ἐ +	stem +	σαν	(3rd person plural)	= ἔθυσαν	"They sacrificed"

B. Vocabulary

θεραπεύω	I heal	κρίνω	I judge or condemn
καθεύδω	I sleep	λέγω	I say
κελεύω	I command	κλείω	I shut

Exercises - Chapter 7

A. Analyzing Aorist Tense Forms and Vocable Review

Greek Word	Stem	Ending	Person	Number	Translation
ἐδίδαξαν	διδα	ξαν	3rd	plural	"They taught"
ἐπιστεύσαμεν					
ἐδούλευσας					
ἐβασίλευσα					
ἔγραψαν					
ἐδίδαξε					
ἐβαπτίσατε					
ἔβλεψας					
ἐδίωξα					
ἐδουλεύσαμεν					
ἔγραψε					
ἐπίστευσαν					
ἐδιδάξατε					

B. Conjugating

- Conjugate each of these verbs by filling the blanks with the rest of the forms of each of these verbs in the aorist tense

1st sg				
2nd sg	ἐπίστευσας			
3rd sg		ἐβασίλευσε		
1st pl			ἐδιδάξαμεν	
2nd pl				ἐγράψατε
3rd pl				

C. Translating Aorist Tense Verbs in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined aorist tense verb in each of these passages.
- Write the translation under the verb in each sentence.

1. John 8:28

ἀλλὰ	καθὼς	ὁ	πατὴρ	ἐδίδαξέν	με	ταῦτα	λαλῶ.
But	just as	the	Father		me	these (things)	I speak.

2. John 18:20

πάντοτε	ἐδίδαξα	ἐν	συναγωγῇ	καὶ	ἐν	τῷ	ἱερῷ.
Always		in	a synagogue	and	in	the	temple.

3. Galatians 4:8

οὐκ	εἰδότες	θεὸν	ἐδουλεύσατε	τοῖς	φύσει	μὴ	οὖσιν	θεοῖς.
Not	knowing	God		those	by nature	which	are not	gods.

4. Mark 12:19

διδάσκαλε,	Μωϋσῆς	ἔγραψε	ἡμῖν	ὅτι…
Teacher,	Moses		for us	that…

5. Mark 1:8

ἐγὼ	ἐβάπτισα	ὑμᾶς	ὕδατι.
I		you	with water.

6. Revelation 20:4

καὶ	ἐβασίλευσαν	μετὰ	τοῦ Χριστοῦ	χίλια	ἔτη.
And		with	Christ	1000	years.

D. Recognizing Forms of Different Tenses

- Identify these forms by giving the following: whether it is present, imperfect, future, or aorist tense; the person; number; and a translation.

Form	Tense	Person	Number	Translation
ἐδίδαξον				
διώκεις				
ἔβλεψαν				
βλέψομεν				
βλέπει				
αὐξάνομεν				
ἐβλέπετε				
βασιλεύσουσι				

E. Memory Work

1. Memorize the endings for the aorist tense.
2. Use your vocable cards to review the vocables from the previous lessons.
3. Make vocable cards for the new words in Part B of this lesson and memorize them.

Lesson Eight

Unit B. Verb Tenses

Lesson 4	Present Tense
Lesson 5	Imperfect Tense
Lesson 6	Future Tense
Lesson 7	Aorist Tense
Lesson 8	**Perfect Tense**

A. Meaning and Forms

1. The perfect tense indicates action that is completed with an ongoing result.
2. Frequently in the New Testament, the perfect tense is used to refer to something God did that had an ongoing result. For example, when Jesus said "τετέλεσται" ("it is finished") on the cross, he meant that he had completed his work of paying the price for our salvation with the ongoing result that our sins are all forgiven.
3. The stem (cf. underlining) for the perfect tense can be:
   a. The same as the stem for the present tense (θύω, τέθυκα).
   b. The same as the aorist (ἠθέλησα, τεθέληκα).
   c. Or it may be slightly different (ἔκλεισα, κέκληκα).
4. What distinguishes the perfect tense from the other tenses are two things:
   a. In most verbs that do not begin with a vowel, the first letter or two of the stem is duplicated and placed in front of the stem (called reduplication) &
   b. the letter kappa in the endings of all the forms.
5. So the perfect tense forms are a combination of reduplication + the stem + the endings of the perfect tense. Like this:

reduplication +	stem +	κα	(1st person sg)	= τέθυκα	"I sacrificed with the result…"
reduplication +	stem +	κας	(2nd person sg)	= τέθυκας	"You sacrificed with the result..."
reduplication +	stem +	κε	(3rd person sg)	= τέθυκε	"He/she/it sacrificed with the result…"
reduplication +	stem +	καμεν	(1st person pl)	= τεθύκαμεν	"We sacrificed with the result…"
reduplication +	stem +	κατε	(2nd person pl)	= τεθύκατε	"You (pl) sacrificed with the result…"
reduplication +	stem +	κασι	(3rd person pl)	= τεθύκασι	"They sacrificed with the result…"

B. Vocabulary

μαθητεύω	I teach	νομίζω	I think
μανθάνω	I learn	νεκρόω	I put to death
μένω	I remain	ὀνομάζω	I name

C. Principal Parts of Verbs

1. Since we have learned the five major tenses in the Greek language, we will give the principal parts of all the verbs you have memorized so far.
2. Five principal parts are listed. They are the first person singular forms for the present, future, imperfect, aorist, and perfect tenses. If a principal part is not listed, it is because that verb is not used in that particular tense in the New Testament.
3. In the imperfect and aorist tenses, note that verbs in the list (marked with an *) which begin with α or ε do not have an ε augment placed in front of the stem. Instead, the ε augment is combined with these letters to form an η (that is, εα becomes η, and εε also becomes η).
4. Likewise, verbs in the list (marked with an *) that begin with omicron have the ε augment combined with the omicron to form ω (that is, εο becomes ω).
5. From now on in this course whenever a verb is given as a vocable to memorize, five principal parts will be listed instead of only the present tense. It would be good to put all five principal parts on your vocable card from now on and memorize all the principal parts for each verb.
6. The principal parts of the verbs you have learned in chapters 1-8 are:

Present	**Future**	**Imperfect**	**Aorist**	**Perfect**
*ἀγαπάω	ἀγαπήσω	ἠγάπων	ἠγάπησα	ἠγάπηκα
ἄγω	ἄξω	ἦγον	ἤγαγον	
*αἰτέω	αἰτήσω	ᾔτον	ᾔτησα	ᾔτηκα
*ἀκούω	ἀκούσω	ἤκουον	ἤκουσα	ἀκήκοα
*ἁμαρτάνω	ἁμαρτήσω	ἡμάρτανον	ἡμάρτησα	ἡμάρτηκα
ἀποκτείνω	ἀποκτενῶ	ἀπέκτεινον	ἀπέκτεινα	ἀπέκτει
*ἁρπάζω	ἁρπάσω	ἥπαζον	ἥρπασα	
*ἄρχω	ἄρξω	ἦρχον	ἦρξα	
*ἀσθενέω	ἀσθενήσω	ἠσθένων	ἠσθένησα	
*ἀτιμάζω	ἀτιμάσω	ἠτίμαζον	ἠτίμασα	
*αὐξάνω	αὐξήσω	ηὔξανον	ηὔξησα	
βάλλω	βαλῶ	ἔβαλλον	ἔβαλον	βέβληκα
βαπτίζω	βαπτίσω	ἐβαπτίζον	ἐβάπτισα	
βασιλεύω	βασιλεύσω	ἐβασίλευον	ἐβασίλευσα	
βλέπω	βλέψω	ἔβλεπον	ἔβλεψα	
γράφω	γράψω	ἔγραφον	ἔγραψα	γέγραφα
διώκω	διώξω	ἐδίωκον	ἐδίωξα	
δοκιμάζω	δοκιμάσω	ἐδοκίμαζον	ἐδοκίμασα	
δοξάζω	δοξάσω	ἐδόξαζον	ἐδόξασα	
δουλεύω	δουλεύσω	ἐδούλευον	ἐδούλευσα	δεδούλευκα

Present	Future	Imperfect	Aorist	Perfect
*ἐγείρω	ἐγερῶ	ἤγειρον	ἤγειρα	
*ἐλευθερόω	ἐλευθερώσω	ἠλεύθερον	ἠλευθέρωσα	
*ἐλπίζω	ἐλπιῶ	ἤλπιζον	ἤλπισα	ἤλπικα
ἐπιθυμέω	ἐπιθυμήσω	ἐπεθύμουν	ἐπεθύμησα	
*εὐαγγελίζω	εὐαγγελίσω	εὐαγγέλιζον	εὐηγγέλισα	
ἔχω	ἕξω	εἶχον	ἔσχον	ἔσχηκα
θαυμάζω	θαυμάσω	ἐθαύμασον	ἐθαύμασα	τεθαύμακα
θέλω	θελήσω	ἔθελον	ἐθέλησα	
θεραπεύω	θεραπεύσω	ἐθεράπευον	ἐθεράπευσα	τεθεράπευκα
θύω	θύσω	ἔθυον	ἔθυσα	τέθυκα
καθεύδω	καθευδήσω	ἐκάθευδον	ἐκαθεύδησα	
κελεύω	κελεύσω	ἐκέλευον	ἐκέλευσα	κεκέλευκα
κλείω	κλείσω	ἔκλειον	ἔκλεισα	κέκληκα
κρίνω	κρινῶ	ἔκρινον	ἔκρινα	κέκρινα
λαμβανω	λήψω	ἐλάμβανον	ἔλαβον	εἴληφα
λέγω	ἐρῶ	ἔλεγον	εἶπον	εἴρηκα
μαθητεύω	μαθητεύσω	ἐμαθήτευον	ἐμαθήτευσα	
μανθάνω	μαθήσω	ἐμανθάνον	ἔμαθον	μεμάθηκα
μένω	μενῶ	ἔμενον	ἔμεινα	μεμένηκα
νεκρόω			νέκρωσα	νενέκρωκα
νομίζω	νομιῶ	ἐνόμιζον	ἐνόμισα	νενόμικα
ὀνομάζω	ὀνομάσω	ὠνόμαζον	ὠνόμασα	ὠνόμακα

Exercises - Lesson 8

A. Analyzing Perfect Tense Forms and Vocable Review

Greek Word	Stem	Ending	Person	Number	Translation
ἠγάπηκα					
ἀκήκοα					
ἡμάρτηκε					
βεβλήκαμεν					
νενομίκασι					
δεδουλεύκατε					
ἤλπικε					
τεθεράπευκα					
κεκελεύκαμεν					
κέκρινας					
νενέκρωσας					
μεμαθήκασι					

B. Conjugating

- Conjugate each of these verbs by filling the blanks with the rest of the forms of each of these verbs in the perfect tense.

1st sg				
2nd sg	γέγραφας			
3rd sg		κέκρινε		
1st pl			δεδουλεύκαμεν	
2nd pl				βεβλήκατε
3rd pl				

C. Translating Perfect Tense Verbs in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined perfect tense verb in each of these passages.
- Write the translation under the verb in each sentence.
- Answer the question in each passage about the continuing result of the completed action of the verb. These questions will not be easy to answer, but, since the perfect tense in Greek indicates a continuing result, this is part of the meaning of these verbs.

1. Matthew 2:5

γὰρ οὕτως **γέγραπται** διὰ τοῦ προφήτου.
For so by the prophet.

a. What is the continuing result when a prophet writes an inspired passage of the Bible?

2. 1 John 4:10

ἐν τούτῳ ἐστὶν ἡ ἀγάπη, οὐκ ὅτι **ἠγαπήκαμεν** τὸν θεὸν.
In this is love, not that God.

a. John says that the real meaning of "love" is not based on our love of God. What would have been the continuing result if this were the basis for the meaning of "love"?

3. 1 John 1:10

ἐὰν εἴπωμεν ὅτι οὐχ **ἡμαρτήκαμεν**
If we say that not

a. What is the continuing result of our sinning against God?

4. John 8:33

Σπέρμα	Ἀβραάμ	ἐσμεν	καὶ	οὐδενὶ	πώποτε	δεδουλεύκαμεν.
Descendants	of Abram	we are	and	to no one	ever	

a. What is the continuing result if a person is made the slave of another person?

D. Recognizing Forms of Different Tenses

Identify these forms by filling the blanks after each verb.

Form	Tense	Person	Number	Translation
ἀκούσουσι				
ἔβαλλε				
ἁμαρτάνεις				
ἐκελεύσατε				
ἐμαθήτευσας				
ἐγράφετε				
κλείσω				
δεδουλεύκασιν				

E. Memory Work

1. Memorize the endings for the perfect tense.
2. Make vocable cards for the new words in Part B of this lesson and memorize them. Include the principal parts of these verbs on your vocable cards.
3. Add the principal parts on your vocable cards for all the verbs learned in the previous lessons.
4. Use your vocable cards to review the verbs from the previous lessons and to begin to learn the principal parts of all these verbs also. Since there are quite a few verbs with all their principal parts, don't try to memorize them all at one time. Keep reviewing them for a little while every day until you know them all.

Lesson Nine

Unit C. Verb Modifiers

Lesson 9 Adverbs
Lesson 10 Adverbial Clauses
Lesson 11 Infinitive
Lesson 12 Prepositional Phrases

A. Meaning of Adverbs

1. Adverbs modify verb forms by limiting the action of the verb in various ways.
2. An adverb can tell the reader:
   a. How the action of the verb happens (e.g. I ate the bread slowly).
   b. When the action of the verb happens (e.g. I ate the bread in the morning).
   c. Where the action happens (e.g. I ate the bread out in the field).
   d. Why the action happens (e.g. I ate the bread because I was hungry).
   e. In spite of what the action happens (e.g. I ate the bread even though the enemy was attacking).
   f. The means by which the action happens (e.g. I ate the bread by biting small pieces from time to time).
3. The action (eating bread) is the same in each example, but each adverb tells you a little more about this action. It's only when you put all the adverbial modifiers together that you have the whole picture.
4. Adverbs are important words in any language because they add a lot to the meaning of a verb. This is true also in interpreting Scripture.

B. Simple Adverbs

1. As we will see in the next chapters of Unit C, adverbial modifiers come in the form of clauses, phrases, and participles. We will discuss each of these separately, but they all can modify the verb in the ways listed in A,2 above.
2. In this chapter we will list only the simple, one word adverbs. Make a vocable card for each one (or each pair) and memorize them. Each of these is used fifty or more times in the New Testament.

C. Vocabulary

νῦν	now	τότε	then
ἐκεῖ	there, in that place	ὧδε	here, in this place
πάλιν	again	εὐθύς	immediately
μᾶλλον	more, rather	ἔτι	yet, even
ὡς οὕτως, κάθως	so, in this way, in the same way		

Exercises - Lesson 9

A. Recognizing Forms of Different Tenses, Vocabulary Review, Adverbs

1. Fill in the blanks in the right column using the example as a model
   a. In the first line analyze the verb (person, number, tense).
   b. In the second line translate the verb and the adverb.
   c. In the third line explain how the adverb modifies the verb.

ἠγάπηκα οὕτως	a.	Perfect, 1st person, singular
	b.	"I loved in this way" (with the continuing result…)
	c.	οὕτως points to the way in which the person loved
αἰτήσεις πάλιν	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
ἠσθενήσατε τότε	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
δουλεύομεν ἐκεῖ	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
εὐθύς ἐλάμβανον	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
νῦν ἔχω	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
τεθεράπευκε ὧδε	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
ἐπιθυμήσουσι μᾶλλον	a.	
	b.	
	c.	

B. Translating Verbs and Simple Adverbs in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined adverb and verb (note carefully the tense).
- Write the translation under those underlined words.
- Then answer the questions about the adverb or tense in each sentence.

1. Matthew 26:65 (the high priest is speaking)

ἴδε	νῦν	ἠκούσατε	τὴν	βλασφημίαν.
See,			the	blasphemy.

a. What does the high priest emphasize by using the adverb νῦν?

2. John 5:18

διὰ τοῦτο	οἱ	Ἰουδαῖοι	ἔθελον	μᾶλλον	ἀποκτεῖναι	αὐτὸν.
Therefore,	the	Jews			to kill	him.

a. What does the adverb μᾶλλον emphasize about the action of the verb?

b. What does the tense of the verb emphasize?

3. John 4:40

οἱ	Σαμαρῖται	ἠρώτων	αὐτὸν	μεῖναι	καὶ	ἔμεινεν	ἐκεῖ	δύο	ἡμέρας.
The	Samaritans	asked	him	to stay	and			two	days.

a. What does the adverb ἐκεῖ explain about the action of the verb?

4. Acts 17:32 (The men in Athens are speaking to Paul.)

οἱ	εἶπαν,	ἀκουσόμεθά	σου	περὶ	τούτου	πάλιν.
They	said,		you	about	this	

a. What are the men of Athens promising Paul by using the adverb πάλιν?

C. Memory Work

1. Use your vocable cards to review all the words from the previous lessons.
2. Keep reviewing and learning the principal parts of more of the verbs.
3. Make vocable cards and learn the meaning of all the adverbs listed in the vocabulary section in this lesson.

Lesson Ten

Unit C. Verb Modifiers

Lesson 9 Adverbs
Lesson 10 Adverbial Clauses
Lesson 11 Infinitive
Lesson 12 Prepositional Phrases

A. Subordinate Clauses

1. In the last chapter we saw that there are simple, one word adverbs. Another type of adverb is a subordinate clause.
2. A subordinate clause is a group of words containing a subject and a verb, but these words are not the main thought in the sentence.
3. For example, the words "because I was hungry" have a subject ("I") and a verb ("was hungry"). When you read these words, however, you are expecting the sentence to say something more like, "I ate some bread because I was hungry."
4. We call these clauses "subordinate clauses" because they add meaning to the sentence but are not the main thought in the sentence. "Subordinate" means lower (sub-) in rank or importance (-ordinate).
5. The group of words in a subordinate clause modifies other words in the sentence. A subordinate clause tells the reader something important about other words in the sentence.
6. In Greek (as in English), some subordinate clauses modify the verb. Since they serve as adverbs we call them adverbial clauses. These are the clauses we will study in this chapter.
7. Other subordinate clauses modify nouns. Since they serve as adjectives, we call them adjectival clauses. We will study about them in Lesson 22.

B. Adverbial Conjunctions

1. Each adverbial clause has a word that joins (conjunction = "join together") it to the rest of the sentence.
2. Each adverbial conjunction also tells us how the particular subordinate clause modifies the verb.
3. Subordinate adverbial clauses can modify the verb in many of the same ways that simple adverbs do: when, where, and why the action of the verb happens (cf. Chapter 8,A,2).
4. The following are some of the adverbial conjunctions that are used most often in the New Testament (fifty or more times):

C. Vocabulary

ἵνα	"in order that" (the purpose why the action of the verb happens)
ὅτε	"when" (the time when the action of the verb happens)
ὥστε	"so that" (the result when the action of the verb happens)
ὅπου	"where" (the place where the action of the verb happens)
ὅτι	"because" (the reason why the action of the verb happens)

Exercises - Lesson 10

A. Recognizing Forms of Tenses, Vocabulary Review, Adverbial Conjunctions

- Fill in the blanks in the right column using the example as a model

1. In the first line, analyze the verb (tense, person, number).
2. In the second line, translate the verb and the adverbial conjunction.
3. In the third line, explain how the clause introduced by the adverbial conjunction would modify the verb.

ἔμεινε ἵνα	a.	3rd person singular aorist
	b.	"He remained in order that . . ."
	c.	The ἵνα clause shows the purpose why he stayed.
ἠγαπήκατε ὥστε	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
αἰτήσομεν ὅπου	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
μένουσι ἵνα	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
δουλεύσει ὅτι	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
ἐκάθευδε ὅτε	a.	
	b.	
	c.	

B. Translating Verbs, Simple Adverbs, and Adverbial Conjunctions in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words (Note carefully the tense of any verb).
- Write the translation under those underlined words.
- Then answer the questions about the adverbial conjunction and tense in each sentence.

1. John 19:8

Πιλᾶτος	ἐφοβήθη	μᾶλλον	ὅτε	ἤκουσεν	τοῦτον	λόγον.
Pilate	was afraid				this	statement.

a. What does the ὅτε clause tell us about the action of the verb ἐφοβήθη?

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb ἤκουσεν?

2. Galatians 4:20

ἤθελον	παρεῖναι	πρὸς	ὑμᾶς	ὅτι	ἀποροῦμαι	ἐν	ὑμῖν.
	to be there	with	you		I am in doubt	about	you.

a. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb ἤθελον?

b. What does the ὅτι clause tell us about Paul's wish to be with the Galatians?

3. Mark 6:55

ἤρξαντο	περιφέρειν	τοὺς	κακῶς	ἔχοντας	ὅπου	ἤκουον	ὅτι	ἐστίν.
They began	to carry	those	who	were sick			that	he was.

a. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb ἤκουον?

b. What does the ὅπου clause tell us about those who carried the sick?

4. Matthew 12:22

ἐθεράπευσεν	αὐτόν,	ὥστε	τὸν κωφὸν	λαλεῖν	καὶ	βλέπειν.
	him,		the deaf (person)	spoke	and	saw.

a. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb ἐθεράπευσεν?

b. What does the ὥστε clause tell us about the action of the verb ἐθεράπευσεν?

C. Memory Work

1. Use your vocable cards to review all the words from the previous lessons.
2. Keep reviewing and learning the principal parts of more of the verbs.
3. Make vocable cards and learn the meaning of all the adverb conjunctions listed in the vocabulary section in this lesson.

Lesson Eleven

Unit C. Verb Modifiers

Lesson 9 Adverbs
Lesson 10 Adverbial Clauses
Lesson 11 Prepositional Phrases
Lesson 12 Infinitive

A. Prepositions

1. A preposition is a word used together with a Greek noun. The phrase formed by a preposition and a noun is called a prepositional phrase.
2. The noun used with the preposition is called the object of the preposition.
3. Prepositional phrases almost always are used as adverbs. Like the other adverbs we have studied in the last two chapters, prepositional phrases tell the reader something important about the action of the verb.
4. The prepositions listed in B below are almost all used fifty times or more in the New Testament.

B. Prepositional Phrases as Adverbial Modifiers

1. A prepositional phrase can tell the reader:
   a. Where the action of the verb happens.

- ἐν = "in"

ἐδιδαξας	**ἐν**	ἡμῶν	πλατείαις	
You were teaching	in	our	streets.	(Luke 13:26)

- ἐπί = "on"

τὸ	θέλημά	σου	γενηθήτω	**ἐπὶ**	γῆς.	
The	will	of yours	be done	on	earth.	(Matthew 6:10)

- ὑπό = "under"

οὐ τιθέασιν	αὐτὸν	**ὑπὸ**	τὸν	μόδιον.	
They don't put	it	under	a	bowl.	(Matthew 5:15)

- πρό = "in front"

φύλακές	ἐτήρουν	φυλακήν	**πρὸ**	τῆς	θύρας.	
Guards	were keeping	guard	in front of	the	door.	(Acts 12:6)

- παρά = “beside”
  εἱστήκεισαν **παρὰ** τῷ σταυρῷ τοῦ Ἰησοῦ.
  They stood **beside** the cross of Jesus. (John 19:25)

b. When the action of the verb happens.
- ἐν = “in, on”
  ἔσται ἀνεκτότερον **ἐν** ἡμέρᾳ κρίσεως.
  It will be more bearable **in** the day of judgment. (Matthew 11:22)

- πρό = “before”
  σπούδασον ἐλθεῖν **πρὸ** χειμῶνος.
  Try hard to come **before** winter. (2 Timothy 4:21)

- μετά = “after”
  μετὰ τινας ἡμέρας Παῦλος εἶπεν.
  After some days Paul said. (Acts 15:36)

c. From where or to where the action of the verb is going.
- ἐκ, ἀπό = “out of, from”
  ἄφες ἐκβάλω τὸ κάρφος **ἐκ** τοῦ ὀφθαλμοῦ σου.
  Let me take the speck **out of** the eye of yours. (Matthew 7:4)

- ἐις, πρός = “into, to”
  Ὑπάγετε **εἰς** τὴν πόλιν πρός τὸν δεῖνα.
  Go **into** the city to this person. (Matthew 26:18)

d. The goal/purpose of the action of the verb.
- ἐις, πρός = “in order to”
  ὅν ὁ θεὸς προέθετο **εἰς** ἔνδειξιν τῆς δικαιοσύνης…
  whom God presented **in order to** demonstrate his justice…

  …**πρὸς** τὴν ἔνδειξιν τῆς δικαιοσύνης.
  …**in order to** demonstrate his justice. (Romans 3:25-26)

e. The means/agent by which the action of the verb happens.
- διά, ἐκ, ὑπό= “by”
  ἔχομεν τὴν ἀπολύτρωσιν **διὰ** τοῦ αἵματος.
  We have the ransom **by** his blood. (Ephesians 1:7)

f. The reason why the action of the verb happens.
- διά = “because”
  ὁ θεὸς ἠγάπησεν ἡμᾶς **διὰ** τὴν πολλὴν ἀγάπην.
  God loved us **because of** his great love. (Ephesians 2:4)

g. The person/thing sharing in the action of the verb.

- σύν, μετά = "with"

σὺν αὐτῷ σταυροῦσιν δὺο λῃστάς.
With him they crucified two thieves. (Mark 15:27)

h. The person/thing for whose benefit the action of the verb happens.

- ὑπέρ = "on behalf of"

Χριστὸς ἀπέθανεν ὑπὲρ ἀσεβῶν.
Christ died on behalf of the wicked. (Romans 5:6)

i. The person/thing concerning which the action of the verb happens.

- περί = "concerning"

ὁ θεὸς πέμψας τὸν ἑαυτοῦ υἱὸν περὶ ἁμαρτίας.
God sent his own Son concerning sin. (Romans 8:3)

j. The person/thing in relationship to which the action of the verb happens.

- κατά = "in line with" (either "against" or "according to")

ὁ ἀδελφός σου ἔχει τι κατὰ σοῦ.
The brother of yours has something against you. (Matthew 5:23)

κρίνατε αὐτόν κατὰ τὸν νόμον ὑμῶν.
Judge him according to the law of yours. (John 18:31)

Exercises - Lesson 11

A. Prepositional Phrases as Adverbial Modifiers

- In the blank following each preposition, indicate what a phrase beginning with this word will tell us about the action of the verb.
- When a preposition has two meanings, indicate both.

Preposition	What a phrase beginning with this word tells us about the action of the verb
σύν	
διά	1.
	2.
ἐπί	
ἐν	1.
	2.
ἀπό	
ὑπό	1.
	2.
μετά	1.
	2.
περί	

ἐκ	1.
	2.
εἰς	1.
	2.
ὑπερ	
πρό	1.
	2.
πρός	1.
	2.
παρά	
κατά	1.
	2.

B. Memory Work

1. Use your vocable cards to review all the words from the previous lessons.
2. Keep reviewing and learning the principal parts of more of the verbs.
3. Make vocable cards and learn the meaning of all the prepositions listed under B in this lesson. Remember that many have two meanings.

Lesson Twelve

Unit C. Verb Modifiers

Lesson 9 Adverbs
Lesson 10 Adverbial Clauses
Lesson 11 Prepositional Phrases
Lesson 12 Infinitives

A. Infinitive Forms and Meaning

1. In Part B of this course (chapters 4-8), we studied the five major tenses in Greek: present, imperfect, future, aorist, and perfect.
2. Three of these tenses also have a form we refer to as an "infinitive."
3. The present tense infinitive:
   a. Is formed by adding the ending -ειν to the present stem (e.g. present infinitive of θύω = θύειν, βάλλω = βάλλειν).
   b. Since it is present tense, it indicates ongoing action.
   c. Whether the action is ongoing at the present time or in past time will have to be determined from the context (usually by the tense of the main verb).
4. The aorist tense infinitive:
   a. Is formed by adding the ending -σαι to verbs whose principal part in the aorist ends in -σα (e.g. the aorist infinitive of ἔθυσα = θύσαι).
   b. Is also formed by adding the ending -ειν to verbs whose principal part in the aorist does not end in -σα (e.g. the aorist infinitive of ἔβαλον = βάλειν).
   c. Note that the aorist infinitive drops the augment of the aorist principal part.
   d. Since it is aorist, it indicates action that happened.
   e. Whether the action happened at the present time or in the past will have to be determined from the context (usually by the tense of the main verb).
5. The perfect tense infinitive:
   a. Is formed by adding the ending -κεναι to the perfect stem. (e.g. the perfect infinitive of τέθυκα = τεθυκέναι, βέβληκα = βεβληκέναι).
   b. Since it is perfect, it indicates completed action with a continuing result.
   c. The time of the completed action and the how long the continuing result goes on will have to be determined by the context (usually by the tense of the main verb).

   N.B. The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case rather than the nominative case. The arrows in the examples below indicate these accusative subjects.

B. The Use of the Infinitive

- The infinitive in Greek modifies a verb in several ways.

1. The infinitive completes the thought (complementary infinitive) of verbs such as those meaning to begin or stop, to wish, to try, to be able, etc. In the following example, the infinitive completes the verb "began" by telling what Jesus began to do.

ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἤρξατο **λέγειν** τοῖς ὄχλοις περὶ Ἰωάννου.
Jesus began to speak to the crowds about John. (Matthew 11:7)

N.B. λέγειν is a present infinitive indicating ongoing action. However, the ongoing action is in past time since the verb this infinitive completes is aorist (action that happened in past time).

2. The infinitive can also indicate the purpose (purpose infinitive) of the action of a verb. In the following example the infinitive gives the purpose of the Wise Men coming to Jerusalem.

ἤλθομεν προσκυνῆσαι αὐτῷ
We came to worship him. (Matthew 2:2)

N.B. προσκυνῆσαι is an aorist infinitive (-σαι ending), but the action has not already happened. Since this is a purpose infinitive, it is something the Wise Men want to happen in the future - hopefully in a day or two.

3. An infinitive can also be used following a preposition and an article (often τό) to form the equivalent of many of the adverbial clauses in Lesson 10. This combination (preposition + article + infinitive) can tell the reader:

a. Why the action of the verb happens =

- διά + the article + the infinitive.

οἱ Σαδδουκαῖοι διαπονούμενοι **διὰ τὸ διδάσκειν** αὐτοὺς
The Sadducees were upset because/were teaching ◄they (disciples)

τὸν λαὸν.
the people. (Acts 4:2)

b. When the action of the verb happens =

- ἐν + the article + the infinitive = at same time as the action of the infinitive.

προσεῖχον τοῖς λεγομένοις ὑπὸ τοῦ Φιλίππου
They listened to the things said by Philip

ἐν τῷ ἀκούειν αὐτοὺς.
while/were hearing ◄they. (Acts 8:6)

- μετά + the article + the infinitive = after the action of the infinitive.

μετὰ τὸ ἀποθανεῖν	τὸν πατέρα	μετῴκισεν	αὐτὸν	εἰς	
After/died ←	his father	[God] moved	him	to	

τὴν γῆν.
this land. (Acts 7:4)

- πρό + the article + the infinitive = before the action of the infinitive.

πρὸ τοῦ ἐλθεῖν	τινας	ἀπὸ	Ἰακώβου	συνήσθιεν	μετὰ
Before/came ←	some men	from	James	he ate	with

τῶν ἐθνῶν.
the Gentiles. (Galatians 2:12)

c. the goal/purpose of the action of the verb = προς or εἰς + article + infinitive.

ἐνδύσασθε	τὴν	πανοπλίαν	θεοῦ	πρὸς τὸ δύνασθαι	ὑμᾶς
Put on	the	whole armor	of God	so that/are able ←	you

στῆναι.
to stand (Ephesians 6:11)

d. the result of the action of the verb = εἰς + the article + the infinitive

νόμος	οὐκ ἀκυροῖ	διαθήκην	εἰς τὸ καταργῆσαι	
The Law	doesn't annul	the covenant	with the result that it destroys	

τὴν ἐπαγγελίαν.
the promise. (Galatians 3:17)

C. Vocabulary

I conquer	νικάω	νικήσω	ἐνίκων	ἐνίκεσα	νενίκηκα
I live	οἰκέω	οἰκήσω	-------	ᾤκησα	ᾤκηκα
I confess	ὁμολογέω	ὁμολογήσω	ὡμολόγων	ὡμολόγησα	-------
I see	ὁράω	ὄψομαι	-------	εἶδον	ἑώρακα
I suffer	πάσχω	πείσομαι	ἔπσχον	ἔπαθον	πέπονθα

Exercises - Lesson 12

A. Practice with Infinitives, Review of Verb Forms, Vocable Review

1. Use the example given as a pattern:
   a. Give the tense, person and number of the main verb.
   b. Give the tense of the infinitive.
   c. Tell what kind of infinitive it is.
      - Complementary (see B,1 in the lesson)
      - Purpose (see B,2 in the lesson)
      - Preposition + article + infinitive = adverbial clause
   d. Translate both words.

ἔγραψα ἐν τῷ λέγειν (he)	a.	Aorist, 1st person, singular
	b.	Present
	c.	Preposition + article + infinitive = adverbial clause
	d.	"I wrote while he was speaking"
θελήσετε μένειν	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
	d.	
ἐλαμβάνομεν ἐσχηκέναι	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
	d.	
μαθητεύει διὰ τὸ μαθεῖν (he)	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
	d.	
ἐνεκρωσε μετὰ τὸ ἀσθενεῖν	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
	d.	
ἤλπισαν βλέπειν	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
	d.	
αἰτήσεις ἔχειν	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
	d.	
εὐαγγελίσαμεν δοξάζειν	a.	
	b.	
	c.	
	d.	

B. Memory Work

1. Use your vocable cards to review all the words from the previous lessons.
2. Keep reviewing and learning the principal parts of more of the verbs.
3. Make vocable cards and memorize the meaning and the principal parts of the verbs under sub-point C in this lesson.

Lesson Thirteen

Unit D. Noun Cases

Lesson 13 Nominative Case
Lesson 14 Accusative Case
Lesson 15 Dative Case (indirect object, adverbial)
Lesson 16 Genitive Case (possessive, subjective and objective)
Lesson 17 Feminine Nouns
Lesson 18 Neuter Nouns
Lesson 19 Another Form of Masculine and Feminine Nouns
Lesson 20 Another Form of Neuter Nouns
Lesson 21 Unusual Forms of Nouns

A. The Function of the Nominative Case

1. There are more forms of the verb in the Greek language than what we studied in Unit C. We will learn more about the verb in several later lessons.
2. Now we will begin to learn more about nouns in the Greek language. In this section, (Unit D) we will focus on what we call the "cases" of nouns.
3. Nouns have different endings indicating different cases.
4. The ending (case) will tell the reader whether the number of the noun is singular or plural and whether the gender of the noun is masculine, feminine, or neuter.
5. Often the ending on a noun will also tell the reader how a noun relates to the verb in a sentence.
6. The nominative case endings (singular or plural) usually indicate that the noun is the subject of a sentence (cf. Lesson 3,A) or of a subordinate clause (cf. Lesson 10,A).
7. To put it another way, the noun in the nominative case is usually the person or thing doing the action of the verb.

B. The Form of the Nominative Case

1. In Lessons 17 and 18, we will learn that there are different endings for the nominative case (often depending on whether the noun is masculine, feminine, or neuter in gender).
2. The ending -ος (e.g. λόγος) indicates three things: the noun is nominative case, singular in number, and masculine in gender (λόγος means "word").
3. The ending -οι (λόγοι) indicates that the noun is nominative case, plural in number, and masculine in gender.
4. When nouns are used in a sentence, they are often used with an article. We will learn more about the meaning of articles in Lesson 22.

5. When a noun ending in the singular, nominative case -ος (λόγος) is used in a sentence, it may be preceded by the article ὁ (e.g. ὁ λόγος). When you memorize the meaning of nouns in the vocabulary assignment that follows, you will learn this article along with the nominative case of the noun.
6. When a noun ending in the plural, nominative case -οι is used in a sentence, it may be preceded by the article οἱ (οἱ λόγοι).

C. Vocabulary

All of these words are used fifty or more times in the New Testament

ὁ λόγος	word	ὁ κόσμος	world
ὁ ἄνθρωπος	man, person	ὁ ἄγγελλος	messenger, angel
ὁ υἱός	son	ὁ ὄχλος	crowd
ὁ ἀδελφός	brother	ὁ δούλος	slave, servant
ὁ οὐρανός	sky, heaven	ὁ κύριος	master, Lord
ὁ νόμος	law	ὁ θάνατος	death

Exercises – Lesson 13

A. Practice with Nominative Cases and Articles

- Fill in the blanks with the singular or plural article and ending.

Singular	Plural
	οἱ θάνατοι
ὁ ἄνθρωπος	
ὁ δούλος	
	οἱ ἀγγέλοι
ὁ κόσμος	
	οἱ νόμοι
	οἱ ὄχλοι
ὁ οὐρανός	
	οἱ ἀδελφοί
ὁ υἱός	
ὁ δούλος	

B. Translate Subjects and Verbs, Vocabulary Review, Tense Review

- Translate the Greek words. Then give the tense of the verb and the kind of action.
- Note in each case that the noun in the nominative case is the doer of the action.

οἱ δούλοι ἔθελον	"The slaves were wanting to . . ."
	Imperfect = ongoing action in the past
υἱός ἀγαπήσει	
οἱ ἀγγελοὶ ἔλεξαν	
βασιλεύει ὁ ἄνθρωπος	
οἱ ἀδελφοί νενίκηκαν	
ὁ νόμος κελεύει	

C. Translating the Subject (Nominative Case) and Verbs in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Place the translation under each word.
- Answer the question about the words in each passage.

1. John 7:51

ὁ νόμος	ἡμῶν	μὴ	κρίνει	τὸν	ἄνθρωπον.
	of ours	not		this	man.

a. What case is ὁ νόμος? Why is it this case?

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb in this passage?

2. Matthew 8:27

οἱ ἄνθρωποι	ἐθαύμασαν	λέγοντες	καὶ	οἱ ἄνεμοι	αὐτῷ	ὑπακούουσιν.
		saying	even	the winds	him	obey.

a. What case is οἱ ἄνθρωποι? Why is it this case?

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb in this passage?

3. Romans 5:14

ἐβασίλευσεν	ὁ θάνατος	ἀπὸ	Ἀδὰμ	μέχρι	Μωϋσέως.
			Adam	until	Moses.

a. What case is ὁ θάνατος? Why is it this case?

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb in this passage?

4. Matthew 21:11

οἱ ὄχλοι	ἔλεγον,	οὗτός	ἐστιν	ὁ προφήτης	Ἰησοῦς.
		this	is	the prophet	Jesus.

a. What case is οἱ ὄχλοι? Why is it this case?

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb in this passage?

D. Memory Work

1. Memorize the masculine nominative singular and plural articles and endings.
2. Use your vocable cards to review all the words from the previous lessons.
3. Keep reviewing and learning the principal parts of more of the verbs.
4. Make vocable cards and memorize the meaning of the nouns listed in sub-point C of this lesson.

Lesson Fourteen

Unit D. Noun Cases

Lesson 13 Nominative Case
Lesson 14 Accusative Case
Lesson 15 Dative Case (indirect object, adverbial)
Lesson 16 Genitive Case (possessive, subjective and objective)
Lesson 17 Feminine Nouns
Lesson 18 Neuter Nouns
Lesson 19 Another Form of Masculine and Feminine Nouns
Lesson 20 Another Form of Neuter Nouns
Lesson 21 Unusual Forms of Nouns

A. The Function of the Accusative Case

1. The accusative case endings (singular and plural) usually indicate that the noun is either the object of the verb in a sentence (cf. Lesson 3,A) or of the verb in a subordinate clause (Lesson 10,A).
2. To put it another way, the noun in the accusative case is usually the person or thing receiving the action of the verb.
3. One exception to this was referred to in Lesson 12 A. A noun in the accusative case serves as the subject of an infinitive.
4. A second frequent use of the accusative case is as the object of a preposition. Nouns used with prepositions (e.g. εἰς, πρός, κατά, διά) are called the object of the preposition. In Lesson 11, we saw that prepositional phrases usually serve as adverbs.
5. Like the nominative case, the ending of the accusative case will tell the reader whether the noun is singular or plural.

B. The Form of the Accusative Case

1. In Lessons 17 and 18, we will learn that there are different endings of the accusative case (depending on whether the noun is masculine, feminine, or neuter in gender).
2. The ending -ον (λόγον) indicates three things: the noun is accusative case, singular in number, and masculine in gender.
3. The ending -ους (λόγους) indicates that the noun is accusative case, plural in number, and masculine in gender.
4. When a noun ending in the singular, accusative case -ον (λόγον) is used in a sentence, it may be preceded by the article τόν (τὸν λόγον).
5. When a noun ending in the plural, accusative case -ους is used in a sentence, it may be preceded by the article τούς (τοὺς λόγους).

C. Vocabulary

ὁ οἶκος	house	ὁ ὀφθαλμός	eye
ὁ ἄρτος	bread	ὁ ἀπόστολος	apostle
ὁ τόπος	place	ὁ καρπός	fruit
ὁ θρόνος	throne	ὁ διδάσκαλος	teacher
ὁ λίθος	stone	ὁ χρόνος	time
ὁ καιρός	the right time, the chosen time	ὁ θεός	God

Exercises - Lesson 14

A. Practice With Accusative Cases and Articles

- Fill in the blanks with the singular or plural article and ending.

τὸν ὀφθαλμόν	
τὸν οἶκον	
	τοὺς τόπους
τὸν καρπόν	
	τοὺς ἀποστόλους
	τοὺς διδασκάλους
τὸν λίθον	
	τοὺς χρόνους
τὸν καίρον	
	τοὺς ἄρτους
τὸν θρόνον	

B. Translate Subjects, Verbs, and Objects; Vocabulary Review

- Identify the subject (the doer of the action), the object (the receiver of the action), and then translate.

1. ὁ διδάσκολος μνήσει τὸν οἶκον	Subject = ὁ διδάσκολος
Object = τὸν οἶκον	"The teacher will remember the house."
2. οἱ ἀδελφοὶ ἤκουσαν τὸν λόγον	Subject =
Object =	
3. ὁ ἄνθρωπος τὸν κοσμὸν νενίκηκε	Subject =
Object =	
4. τοὺς ὄχλους ἐμανθάνει ὁ υἱός	Subject =
Object =	
5. οἱ ἀποστόλοι ἐβάπτισαν τὸν δούλον	Subject =
Object =	

6. ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοὺς λίθους βάλλει	Subject =
Object =	

C. Translating the Subject, Verb, and Object in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Place the translation under each word.
- Answer the question about the verb in each passage.

1. John 7:51

ὁ νόμος ἡμῶν μὴ κρίνει τὸν ἄνθρωπον.
of ours not

a. What case is ὁ νόμος? Why is it this case?

b. What case is τὸν ἄνθρωπον? Why is it this case?

c. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb in this passage?

2. Acts 9:27

Βαρναβᾶς ἤγαγεν αὐτὸν πρὸς τοὺς ἀποστόλους.
Barnabas him .

a. The words τοὺς ἀποστόλους are used with the preposition πρὸς. What case is τοὺς ἀποστόλους? Why is it this case?

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb in this passage?

3. 1 Corinthians 11:23

ὁ κύριος Ἰησοῦς ἔλαβεν ἄρτον.
The Lord Jesus

a. What case is ἄρτον? Why is it this case?

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb in this passage?

4. Matthew 21:34

ὅτε ὁ καιρὸς ἤγγισεν, ἀπέστειλεν τοὺς δούλους πρὸς τοὺς γεωργοὺς
came near, he sent the farmers

λαβεῖν τοὺς καρποὺς αὐτοῦ.
of his.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Explain why this is in each case.
- ὁ καιρὸς

- τοὺς δούλους

- τοὺς καρποὺς

b. What kind of infinitive is λαβεῖν? Explain.

5. John 12:29

ἄλλοι	**ἔλεγον,**	**ἄγγελος**	αὐτῷ	λελάληκεν.
Others			to him	spoke.

a. What case is ἄγγελος? Why is it this case?

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἔλεγον?

D. Memory Work

1. Use your vocable cards to review all the words from the previous lessons.
2. Make vocable cards and memorize the meaning of the nouns listed in sub-point C of this lesson.
3. Memorize the masculine accusative singular and plural articles and endings.

Lesson Fifteen

Unit D. Noun Cases

Lesson 13 Nominative Case
Lesson 14 Accusative Case
Lesson 15 Dative Case (indirect object, adverbial)
Lesson 16 Genitive Case (possessive, subjective and objective)
Lesson 17 Feminine Nouns
Lesson 18 Neuter Nouns
Lesson 19 Another Form of Masculine and Feminine Nouns
Lesson 20 Another Form of Neuter Nouns
Lesson 21 Unusual Forms of Nouns

A. The Form of the Dative Case

1. In Lessons 17 and 18, we will learn that there are different endings of the dative case (depending on whether the noun is masculine, feminine, or neuter in gender).
2. The ending -ῳ (λόγῳ) indicates three things: the noun is dative case, singular in number, and masculine in gender.
3. The ending -οις (λόγοις) indicates that the noun is dative case, plural in number, and masculine in gender.
4. When a noun ending in the singular, dative case -ῳ (λόγῳ) is used in a sentence, it may be preceded by the article τῷ (τῷ λόγῳ).
5. When a noun ending in the plural, dative case -οις is used in a sentence, it may be preceded by the article τοῖς (τοῖς λόγοις).

B. The Function of the Dative Case

1. The functions of the nominative and accusative cases were fairly easy to describe. The function of the dative case is more difficult to describe, since it has uses that are quite different from one another.
2. The functions of the dative case fall into four basic categories:
   a. Indirect object of the verb: The dative case may indicate the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of the verb.

      N.B. Often a person to whom something is said or given
      e.g. Ephesians 4:8

ἔδωκεν	δόματα	τοῖς ἀνθρώποις.
He gave	gifts	to the people.

b. Expressing possession: The dative case may be used with the verb "is/was" to indicate the person who possesses something.

N.B. Since this is not the usual way of expressing possession, it puts the emphasis on the thing possessed rather than on the one who is doing the possessing.

e.g. Matthew 18:12

ἐὰν	γένηται	**ἀνθρώπῳ**	ἑκατὸν	πρόβατα...
If	has	a man	100	sheep…

c. Object of a preposition: The object of some prepositions (e.g. ἐν, παρα, σύν) is in the dative case. In Lesson 11 we saw that prepositional phrases almost always serve as adverbs.

e.g.

βλέποντες	τόν	ἄνθρωπον	ἑστῶτα	σὺν	**αὐτοῖς**
Seeing	the	man	standing	with	them

d. Adverb: The dative case may modify a verb in one of many ways. (Like adverbial clauses [Lesson 10], or the preposition + article + infinitive clauses [Lesson 12,B,3]). An adverbial dative can tell the reader:

- Agent or Means: by whom or by what the action of the verb happens.

  e.g. Romans 8:14

ἄγονται	**πνεύματι**	θεοῦ.
They are led	by the Spirit	of God.

  e.g. Acts 12:2

ἀνεῖλεν	Ἰάκωβον	**μαχαίρῃ.**
He killed	James	by a sword.

- Time or Place: when or where the action of the verb happens.

  e.g. Mark 14:30

ταύτῃ τῇ νυκτὶ	ἀπαρνήσῃ	με	τρίς.
In that night	you will deny	me	three times.

  e.g. Acts 2:33

ὑψωθείς	**τῇ δεξιᾷ**	τοῦ θεοῦ
After being exalted	at the right hand	of God

- Reference (Respect): the person or thing to which the action of the verb refers or relates.

  e.g. Romans 6:11

λογίζεσθε	ἑαυτοὺς	[εἶναι]	νεκροὺς	**τῇ ἁμαρτίᾳ**.
Consider	yourselves	to be	dead	to sin.

- Association (Accompaniment): together with whom, or together with what, the action of the verb happens.

  e.g. Acts 9:7

οἱ ἄνδρες	οἱ συνοδεύοντες	**αὐτῷ**
The men	who were traveling	with him

- Manner: the way the subject of the verb does the action of the verb.
  e.g. 1 Corinthians 10:30
  εἰ ἐγὼ μετέχω χάριτι
  If I take part with thankfulness

C. Vocabulary

I speak	λαλέω	λαλήσω	ἐλάλουν	ἐλάλησα	λελάληκα
I know	γινώσκω	-------	ἐγίνωσκον	ἔγνων	ἔγνωκα
I find	εὑρίσκω	εὑρήσω	εὕρισκον	εὗρησα	εὕρηκα
I call	καλέω	καλέσω	ἐκάλουν	ἐκάλεσα	κέκληκα
I send	ἀποστέλλω	ἀποστελῶ	-------	ἀπέστειλα	ἀπέσταλκα
I encourage/ I comfort	παρακαλέω	παρακαλέσω	παρεκάλουν	παρεκάλεσα	-------
I live	ζάω	ζήσω	ἔζων	ἔζησα	ἔζηκα
I throw out	ἐκβάλλω	ἐκβαλῶ	ἐξέβαλλον	ἐξέβαλον	-------

Exercises - Lesson 15

A. Practice with Dative Cases and Articles

- Fill in the blanks with the corresponding singular or plural article and dative ending.

τῷ ἀδελφῷ	
	τοῖς ὄχλοις
	τοῖς καρποῖς
τῷ δούλῳ	
τῷ θεῷ	
	τοῖς θρόνοις
τῷ ἀγγέλῳ	
	τοῖς ἀποστόλοις
	τοῖς υἱοῖς
τῷ διδασκάλῳ	

B. Vocabulary and Syntax Review

- Write the case above each noun and the tense above each verb form.
- Translate each sentence.
- Answer the questions about the words in each sentence.

1.

nominative	aorist	accusative	present		dative
ὁ ἄγγελος	ἐκέλευσε	τὸν ἄνθρωπον	μένειν	ἐν	τῷ οἰκῷ.
The angel	commanded	the man	to remain	in	the house.

a. What does the tense of μένειν tell us about the kind of action indicated?
It indicates that the angel was commanding that the action of remaining be ongoing.
b. Which of the four uses of the dative (B,2 of this lesson) is οἰκῷ?
It is used as the object of the preposition ἐν = B,2,c.

2.

ὁ διδάσκαλος ἐβάλλε ἄρτον τοῖς δούλοις συν τῷ ἀδελφῷ.

a. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἐβάλλε?

b. What kind of dative is δούλοις?

c. What kind of dative is ἀδελφῷ?

3.

ἀκούουσι οἱ ἀποστόλοι τὸν λόγον τῷ τόπῳ

a. What kind of action is indicated by the verb ἀκούουσι?

b. What kind of dative is τόπῳ?

C. Translating Cases and Verbs in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Place the translation under the words.
- Answer the questions about the words in each passage.

1. Matthew 22:3

<u>ἀπέστειλεν</u>	<u>τοὺς δούλους</u>	<u>καλέσαι</u>	τοὺς κεκλημένους	<u>εἰς</u>	τοὺς γάμους.
			the invited ones		the wedding.

a. What kind of infinitive is καλέσαι?

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἀπέστειλεν and καλέσαι?

c. What use of the accusative case is δούλους?

d. What use of the accusative case is κεκλημένους?

e. What use of the accusative case is γάμους?

2. 2 Corinthians 7:14

πάντα	ἐν	ἀληθείᾳ	ἐλαλήσαμεν	ὑμῖν.
All things		truth		to you.

a. What kind of action is indicated by the verb ἐλαλήσαμεν?

b. What use of the dative case is ἀληθείᾳ?

c. What use of the dative case is ὑμῖν?

3. Romans 14:6

ὁ ἐσθίων	ἐσθίει	κυρίῳ,	εὐχαριστεῖ	τῷ θεῷ.
The one eating	eats		he gives thanks	

a. The dative κυρίῳ is a dative of reference. Explain.

b. What use of the dative case is θεῷ?

4. Acts 11:16

Ἰωάννης	ἐβάπτισεν	ὕδατι,	δὲ	βαπτισθήσεσθε	ἐν	πνεύματι	ἁγίῳ.
John			but	you will be baptized		Spirit	Holy.

a. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἐβάπτισεν?

b. What use of the dative case is ὕδατι?

c. What use of the dative case is πνεύματι?

D. Memory Work

1. Use your vocable cards to review all the words from the previous lessons.
2. Make vocable cards and memorize the meaning of the verbs listed in sub-point C of this lesson.
3. Memorize the masculine dative singular and plural articles and endings.

Lesson Sixteen

Unit D. Noun Cases

Lesson 13 Nominative Case
Lesson 14 Accusative Case
Lesson 15 Dative Case (indirect object, adverbial)
Lesson 16 Genitive Case (possessive, subjective and objective)
Lesson 17 Feminine Nouns
Lesson 18 Neuter Nouns
Lesson 19 Another Form of Masculine and Feminine Nouns
Lesson 20 Another Form of Neuter Nouns
Lesson 21 Unusual Forms of Nouns

A. The Form of the Genitive Case

1. In Lessons 17 and 18 we will learn that there are different endings of the genitive case (depending on whether the noun is masculine, feminine or neuter in gender).
2. The ending -ου (λόγου) indicates three things: the noun is genitive case, singular in number, and masculine in gender.
3. The ending -ων (λόγων) indicates that the noun is genitive case, plural in number, and masculine in gender.
4. When a masculine noun ending in the singular, genitive case (λόγου) is used in a sentence, it may be preceded by the article τοῦ (τοῦ λόγου).
5. When a masculine noun ending in the plural, genitive case (λόγων) is used in a sentence, it may be preceded by the article τῶν (τῶν λόγων).
6. A noun with the genitive case is almost always attached to another noun in the sentence, and it almost always follows right after that other noun in the sentence.

B. The Function of the Genitive Case

1. The function of the genitive case, like the dative case, has uses that are quite different from one another.
2. The functions of the genitive case fall into four basic categories:
   a. Expressing possession = the genitive case may indicate the person who possesses something:
      e.g. Luke 19:5

σήμερον	δεῖ	με	μεῖναι	εν	τῷ οἴκῳ	σου
Today	it is necessary	that I	stay	at	the house	of yours.

b. Object of a preposition = the object of some prepositions (e.g. ἀπό, ἐκ, περι) is in the genitive case. In Lesson 11 we saw that prepositional phrases almost always serve as adverbs.

e.g. John 18:19

ἠρώτησεν	τὸν Ἰησοῦν	περὶ	τῶν μαθητῶν.
He asked	Jesus	about	his disciples.

c. Subjective or objective = the genitive case may be the subject (doer) or object (receiver) of the action expressed by the verbal noun to which it is attached:

e.g. A verbal noun is a noun that expresses action. The noun ἀγάπη ("love") used with the genitive Χριστοῦ ("of Christ") in 2 Corinthians 5:14 means the love Christ has for us (Χριστοῦ is a subjective genitive. It indicates Christ is the doer of the loving). In Romans 1:1, Paul speaks of himself as a δοῦλος Χριστοῦ, "a servant of Christ" (Χριστοῦ in this case is an objective genitive. It indicates Christ is the receiver of Paul's service - Christ is the one Paul serves).

d. Descriptive/adjectival = a noun in the genitive case may modify the noun to which it is attached (cf. A,6 above), telling the reader what kind of person or thing the preceding noun is.

e.g. A descriptive genitive may:

- give a characteristic of the noun to which it is attached

Romans 7:24

σώματος	θανάτου
body	of death

- Kind of body?

"a death body", that is, a body that is characterized as dying.

- give the contents of the noun to which it is attached

Mark 5:11

ἀγέλη	χοίρων
herd	of pigs

- Kind of herd?

"a pig herd", that is, a herd made up of pigs.

- explain the noun to which it is attached

Acts 2:38

δωρεὰν	τοῦ	ἁγίου	πνεύματος
the gift	of the	Holy	Spirit

- Kind of gift?

The gift is the Holy Spirit.

- give the source of the noun to which it is attached

Romans 3:22

δικαιοσύνη	θεου
the acquittal	of God

- Kind of acquittal?

"a God acquittal", that is, the acquittal that comes from God.

N.B. As shown beneath the examples above, it often helps to put the noun that is the descriptive genitive in front of the other noun to answer the question "What kind of…?" Then use the context to figure out the meaning.

C. Vocabulary

I eat	ἐσθίω	-------	-------	ἔφαγον	-------
I send	πέμπω	πέμψω	-------	ἔπεμψα	πέπομφα
I witness	μαρτυρέω	μαρτυρήσω	ἐμαρτύρουν	ἐμαρτύρησα	μεμαρτύρηκα
I seek	ζητέω	ζητήσω	ἐζήτουν	ἐζήτησα	ἐζήτηκα
I walk	περιπατέω	περιπατήσω	περιεπάτουν	περιεπάτησα	-------
I fall	πίπτω	-------	ἔπιπτον	ἔπεσα	πέπτωκα
I fill	πληρόω	πληρώσω	ἐπλήρων	ἐπλήρωσα	πεπλήρωκα
I persuade	πείθω	πείσω	ἔπειθον	ἔπεισα	πέποιθα

Exercises - Lesson 16

A. Practice With Genitive Cases and Articles

- Fill in the blanks with the corresponding singular or plural article and genitive ending.

τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ	
	τῶν δούλων
	τῶν ἀγγέλων
τοῦ τόπου	
τοῦ θρόνου	
	τῶν ἀποστόλων
τοῦ καίρου	
	τῶν υἱῶν

B. Vocabulary and Syntax Review

- Write the case above each noun and the tense above each verb form.
- Translate each sentence. Put the translation below each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in each sentence.
- Number 1 is an example of what to do.

1.

nominative	genitive	aorist	accusative	genitive
ὁ λόγος	θεοῦ	παρεκάλεσα	τούς ἀποστόλους	τοῦ κυρίου.
The word	of God	encouraged	the apostles	of the Lord.

a. What does the tense of παρεκάλεσα tell us about the kind of action indicated?
It indicates the encouragement happened – it is a fact.
b. Which of the four uses of the genitive (B,2 of this lesson) are both θεοῦ and κυρίου?
Both are genitives of possession indicating to whom the Word and the apostles belong.

2.

οἱ ὀφθαλμοί τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ ἐζήτησαν βλέπειν τόν τόπον θανάτου.

a. What kind of infinitive is βλέπειν?

b. What kind of genitive is τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ?

c. The genitive θανάτου is a descriptive/adjectival genitive. Explain.

3.

ὁ λόγος νόμου λαλεῖ περὶ τῶν καρπῶν τῶν δούλων κυρίου

a. The genitive νόμου is a descriptive/adjectival genitive. Explain.

b. What kind of genitive is τῶν καρπῶν?

c. The genitive τῶν δούλων is a subjective genitive. Explain.

d. The genitive κυρίου is an objective genitive. Explain.

C. Translating Verbs and Cases in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Place the translation under the words.
- Answer the questions about the words in each passage.

1. John 2:21

ἔλεγεν	περὶ	τοῦ ναοῦ	τοῦ σώματος	αὐτοῦ.
		the temple		

a. What tense is ἔλεγεν? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

b. What kind of genitive is τοῦ ναοῦ? Explain.

c. τοῦ σώματος is a descriptive/adjectival genitive. Explain.

d. What kind of genitive is αὐτοῦ? Explain.

2. Matthew 9:34

τῷ ἄρχοντι	τῶν δαιμονίων	ἐκβάλλει	τὰ δαιμόνια.
By the ruler	of the demons		the demons.

a. What tense is ἐκβάλλει? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

b. What kind of genitive is τῶν δαιμονίων? Explain.

3. Philippians 2:8

ἐταπείνωσεν	ἑαυτὸν	μέχρι	θανάτου	σταυροῦ.
He humbled	himself	until		of the cross.

a. What kind of genitive is θανάτου? Explain.

b. What kind of genitive is σταυροῦ? Explain.

4. Philippians 4:7

ἡ εἰρήνη	τοῦ θεοῦ	φρουρήσει	τὰς καρδίας	ὑμῶν.
The peace		will guard	the hearts	of yours.

a. The genitive τοῦ θεοῦ is a descriptive/adjectival genitive. Explain.

b. Why is τὰς καρδίας in the accusative case?

c. What kind of genitive is ὑμῶν? Explain.

5. Matthew 8:16

ἐξέβαλεν	τὰ πνεύματα	λόγῳ	καὶ	τοὺς κακῶς ἐξοντας	ἐθεράπευσεν.
	the spirits		and	those who were ill	

a. What tense are both of the verbs? What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

b. What kind of dative is λόγῳ? Explain.

D. Memory Work

1. Use your vocable cards to review all the words from the previous lessons.
2. Make vocable cards and memorize the meaning of the verbs listed in sub-point C of this lesson.
3. Memorize the masculine genitive singular and plural articles and endings.

Lesson Seventeen

Unit D. Noun Cases

Lesson 13 Nominative Case
Lesson 14 Accusative Case
Lesson 15 Dative Case (indirect object, adverbial)
Lesson 16 Genitive Case (possessive, subjective and objective)
Lesson 17 Feminine Nouns
Lesson 18 Neuter Nouns
Lesson 19 Another Form of Masculine and Feminine Nouns
Lesson 20 Another Form of Neuter Nouns
Lesson 21 Unusual Forms of Nouns

A. The Forms of Feminine Nouns

1. In Lessons 13 to 16, we learned the endings for the four cases. These were only the endings of nouns that are masculine in gender, however.
2. Nouns that are feminine in gender have different endings for each of the four cases both in the singular and the plural.
3. The endings for the feminine nouns are similar in many instances to endings of masculine nouns.
4. We will list first the masculine noun (λόγος) and its endings that you learned in Lessons 13-16. Then you can compare the feminine endings with what you have already learned. Seeing the similarities may help you remember more easily the endings of the feminine and neuter nouns.
5. The endings and articles for the masculine and feminine nouns are:

Case	Masculine Ending	Masculine noun	Feminine ending 1	Feminine noun		Feminine ending 2	Feminine noun
Singular							
Nominative	-ος	(ὁ λόγος)	-η	(ἡ γραφή)	or	-α	(ἡ οἰκία)
Genitive	-ου	(τοῦ λογοῦ)	-ης	(τῆς γραφῆς)	or	-ας	(τῆς οἰκίας)
Dative	-ῳ	(τῷ λόγῳ)	-ῃ	(τῇ γραφῇ)	or	-ᾳ	(τῇ οἰκίᾳ)
Accusative	-ον	(τὸν λόγον)	-ην	(τήν γραφῆν)	or	-αν	(τήν οικίαν)
Plural							
Nominative	-οι	(οἱ λόγοι)	-αι	(αἱ γραφαί)	(The endings are all the same for feminine nouns in the plural.)		
Genitive	-ων	(τῶν λόγων)	-ων	(τῶν γραφῶν)			
Dative	-οις	(τοῖς λόγοις)	-αις	(ταῖς γραφαῖς)			
Accusative	-ους	(τοὺς λόγους)	-ας	(τάς γραφάς)			

B. The Functions of the Cases of the Feminine Nouns

1. The functions or uses of the four feminine cases are exactly the same as the masculine cases (cf. Lessons 13-16).

C. Vocabulary

All of these nouns are used fifty or more times in the New Testament

ἡ ἡμέρα, -ας	day	ἡ γῆ, γῆς	earth, ground
ἡ ἁμαρτία, -ας	sin	ἡ δόξα, -ας	glory
ἡ βασιλεία, -ας	kingdom	ἡ καρδία, -ας	heart
ἡ ζωή, ῆς	life	ἡ ἀγάπη, -ης	love
ἡ ἀλήθεια, -ας	truth	ἡ φωνή, -ῆς	sound, voice

Exercises - Lesson 17

A. Practice with the Cases and Articles of Feminine Nouns

- Fill in the blank with the corresponding singular or plural article and case ending.

τῆς ἡμερᾶς	
τῇ δόξᾳ	
	τὰς καρδίας
	αἱ φωναί
τὴν ἁμαρτίαν	
ἡ ἀγάπη	
	ταῖς ἡμέραις
	τῶν φωνῶν

B. Vocabulary and Syntax Review

- For an example, look at the exercises of Lesson 16,B.
- Write the case above each noun and the tense above each verb form.
- Translate each sentence. Put the translation below each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in each sentence.

1.

ἡ δόξα τοῦ κυρίου ἐμένεν σὺν τῷ ὄχλῳ τῶν ἀδελφῶν

a. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἐμένεν?

b. Explain the case of ἡ δόξα? (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

c. Explain the case of τοῦ κυρίου. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

d. Explain the case of τῷ ὄχλῳ. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

e. Explain the case of τῶν ἀδελφῶν. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

2.

ἡ βασιλεία θεοῦ ἐν καρδίαις τῶν ἀνθρώπων βασιλεύει διὰ τοῦ λόγου

a. Explain the case of θεοῦ. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

b. Explain the case of ἡ βασιλεία. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

c. Explain the case of καρδίαις. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

d. Explain the case of τῶν ἀνθρώπων? (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

e. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of βασιλεύει?

f. Explain the case of τοῦ λόγου. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

3.

ἡ ἀγάπη τῆς ἁμαρτίας ἐπὶ τῇ γῇ ἤγαγε εἰς τὸν θάνατον

a. Explain the case of ἡ ἀγάπη. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

b. Explain the case of τῆς ἁμαρτίας. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

c. Explain the case of τῇ γῇ. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

d. Explain the case of τὸν θάνατον. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

e. What kind of action does the tense of ἤγαγε indicate?

C. Translating Verbs and Cases in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Place the translation under the words.
- Answer the questions about the words in each passage.

1. Hebrews 1:2

ὁ θεὸς	ἐπ’	ἐσχάτου	τῶν ἡμερῶν	ἐλάλησεν	ἡμῖν	ἐν υἱῷ.
	at	the end			to us	

a. What kind of genitive is τῶν ἡμερῶν? Explain.

b. What case is ὁ θεὸς? What does this indicate about the use of this word in this sentence?

c. What tense is ἐλάλησεν? What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

d. What case is υἱῷ? Why is it this case in this sentence?

2. Matthew 25:31

Ὅταν	ἔλθῃ	ὁ υἱὸς	ἐν τῇ δόξῃ	αὐτοῦ	τότε	καθίσει	ἐπὶ θρόνου	δόξης.
When	comes			of his	then	he will sit		

a. What case is ὁ υἱὸς? Why is it this case in this sentence?

b. What case is τῇ δόξῃ? Why is it this case in this sentence?

c. What case is θρόνου? Why is it this case in this sentence?

d. The word δόξης is a descriptive genitive. Explain.

3. Matthew 19:17

εἰ	θέλεις	εἰς τὴν ζωὴν	ἐλθεῖν,	τήρησον	τὰς ἐντολάς.
If				keep	the commandments.

a. What tense is θέλεις? What kind of action does the tense of θέλεις indicate?

b. What case is τὴν ζωὴν? Why is it this case in this sentence?

c. The word ἐλθεῖν is an aorist infinitive. What kind of action does its tense indicate?

d. What kind of infinitive is ἐλθεῖν? Explain.

D. Memory Work

1. Use your vocable cards to review all the words from the previous lessons.
2. Memorize the singular and plural articles and endings for the feminine nouns.
3. Make vocable cards and memorize the meaning of the nouns listed in sub-point C of this lesson.

Lesson Eighteen

Unit D. Noun Cases

Lesson 13 Nominative Case
Lesson 14 Accusative Case
Lesson 15 Dative Case (indirect object, adverbial)
Lesson 16 Genitive Case (possessive, subjective and objective)
Lesson 17 Feminine Nouns
Lesson 18 Neuter Nouns
Lesson 19 Another Form of Masculine and Feminine Nouns
Lesson 20 Another Form of Neuter Nouns
Lesson 21 Unusual Forms of Nouns

A. The Forms of Neuter Nouns

1. In Lessons 13 to 16, we learned the endings for the four cases. However, these were only the endings of nouns that are masculine in gender.
2. Nouns that are neuter in gender have different ending for each of the four cases both in the singular and the plural.
3. The endings for the neuter nouns are similar in many instances to endings of masculine nouns. Some endings of neuter nouns are exactly the same (cf. the boxes in the chart below).
4. We will list first the masculine noun (λόγος) and its endings that you learned in lessons 13-16. Then you can compare the neuter endings with what you have already learned. Seeing the similarities may help you remember more easily the endings of the neuter nouns.
5. The endings and articles for the masculine and neuter nouns are:

Case and Number	Masculine Ending	Masculine Noun	Neuter Ending	Neuter Noun
Nominative singular	-ος	(ὁ λόγος)	-ον	(τὸ τέκνον)
Genitive singular	-ου	(τοῦ λόγου)	-ου	(τοῦ τέκνου)
Dative singular	-ῳ	(τῷ λόγῳ)	-ῳ	(τῷ τέκνῳ)
Accusative singular	-ον	(τὸν λόγον)	-ον	(τὸν τέκνον)
Nominative plural	-οι	(οἱ λόγοι)	-α	(τὰ τέκνα)
Genitive plural	-ων	(τῶν λόγων)	-ων	(τῶν τέκνων)
Dative plural	-οις	(τοῖς λόγοις)	-οις	(τοῖς τέκνοις)
Accusative plural	-ους	(τούς λόγους)	-α	(τὰ τέκνα)

B. The Functions of the Cases of the Neuter Nouns

1. The functions or uses of the four neuter cases are exactly the same as the masculine cases. (cf. Lessons 13-16)

C. Vocabulary

(All of these nouns are used 50 or more times in the New Testament)

τὸ ἔργον, -ου	work	τὸ πλοῖον, ου	boat
τὸ τέκνον, -ου	child	ἡ οἰκία, -ας	house
τὸ σημεῖον, -ου	sign	ἡ εἰρήνη, -ης	peace
τὸ εὐαγγέλιον, -ου	good news	ἡ κεφαλὴ, -ῆς	head
τὸ ἱερόν, οῦ	temple	ἡ σοφία, -ας	wisdom

Exercises - Lesson 18

A. Practice with the Cases and Articles of Neuter Nouns

- Fill in the blank with the corresponding singular or plural article and case ending.

τῷ τέκνῳ		τοῦ τέκνου	
	τὰ ἔργα		τῶν ἔργων
	τοὶς ἱέροις	τὸ ἱερόν	
τὸ σημεῖον			τὰ εὐαγγελία
	τῶν εὐαγγελίων	τοῦ σημείου	
τὸ πλοῖον			τοῖς πλοίοις

B. Vocabulary and Syntax Review

- For an example, look at the exercises of lesson 16,B.
- Write the case above each noun and the tense above each verb form.
- Translate each sentence. Put the translation below each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in each sentence.

1.

ὁ ὄχλος ἤλπισε βλέψαι τὰ ἔργα τῶν τέκνων

a. Explain the case of ὁ ὄχλος. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἤλπισε?

c. What kind of infinitive is βλέψαι? Explain.

- What tense is it?

d. Explain the case of τὰ ἔργα. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)

e. Τῶν τέκνων is a subjective genitive. Explain.

2.

ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ οἱ ἀγγέλοι ἤκουσαν τὴν φωνὴν τοῦ κυρίου.

a. Explain the case of each of these nouns. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)
- τῷ ἱερῷ
- οἱ ἀγγέλοι
- τὴν φωνὴν
- τοῦ κυρίου

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἤκουσαν?

3.

τὸ εὐαγγέλιον ἐκ θεοῦ πέμπει τὴν εἰρήνην τοῖς ἀνθρώποις.

a. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of πέμπει?

b. Explain the case of each of these words. (Why is it this case in this sentence?)
- τὸ εὐαγγέλιον
- θεοῦ
- τὴν εἰρήνην
- τοῖς ἀνθρώποις

C. Translating Verbs and Cases in Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Place the translation under the words.
- Answer the questions about the words in each passage.

1. John 3:19

ἠγάπησαν	οἱ ἄνθρωποι	τὸ σκότος	γὰρ	τὰ ἔργα	αὐτῶν	ἦν	πονηρὰ.
		the darkness	for		of them	were	evil.

a. What tense is ἠγάπησαν?

- What kind of action does this tense indicate?

b. What gender is οἱ ἄνθρωποι?

- What case is it?

- Why is it this case in this sentence?

c. What gender is τὸ σκότος?

- What case is it?

- Why is it this case in this sentence?

d. What gender is τὰ ἔργα?

- What case is it?

- Why is it this case in this sentence?

2. 1 Thessalonians 2:9

ἐκηρύξαμεν	εἰς ὑμας	τὸ εὐαγγέλιον	τοῦ θεοῦ.
We proclaimed			

a. What kind of word is εἰς?

b. What gender is τὸ εὐαγγέλιον?

- What case is it?

- Why is it this case in this sentence?

c. What case is τοῦ θεοῦ?

- Why is it this case in this sentence?

3. John 6:21

ἤθελον	λαβεῖν	αὐτὸν	εἰς	τὸ πλοῖον,	καὶ	εὐθέως	τὸ πλοῖον
		him				immediately	

ἐγένετο ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς.
was

a. The verb ἤθελον is imperfect tense. What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

b. What kind of word is λαβεῖν?

- What tense is it?

c. What kind of words are εἰς and ἐπὶ ?

d. What gender is τὸ πλοῖον?

- What case is the first τὸ πλοῖον (after εἰς)?

- What case is the second τὸ πλοῖον?

- Why is it (the second τὸ πλοῖον) this case in this sentence?

e. What gender is τῆς γῆς?

- What case is it?

- Why is it this case in this sentence?

D. Memory Work

1. Use your vocable cards to review all the words from the previous lessons.
2. Memorize the singular and plural articles and endings for the neuter nouns.
3. Make vocable cards and memorize the meaning of the nouns listed in sub-point C of this lesson.

Lesson Nineteen

Unit D. Noun Cases

Lesson 13 Nominative Case
Lesson 14 Accusative Case
Lesson 15 Dative Case (indirect object, adverbial)
Lesson 16 Genitive Case (possessive, subjective and objective)
Lesson 17 Feminine Nouns
Lesson 18 Neuter Nouns
Lesson 19 Another Form of Masculine and Feminine Nouns
Lesson 20 Another Form of Neuter Nouns
Lesson 21 Unusual Forms of Nouns

A. How these nouns differ from those learned earlier

1. In lessons 13-16 we learned a form that masculine nouns take in Greek.
2. In lesson 17 we learned a form that feminine nouns take in Greek.
3. Now we will see another form of masculine and feminine nouns in Greek.
4. There are three things that are different about these masculine and feminine nouns:
   a. The endings to these nouns are entirely different from those presented in Lessons 16 and 17;
   b. The endings to these nouns are the same no matter whether they are masculine or feminine.
   c. The stem of the genitive case is often different from the stem of the nominative case.
5. The differences mentioned in 4b and 4c indicate that it will be more important than ever that you do careful work when you memorize these nouns.
   a. Memorizing the article with the noun will be the only way that you will know whether the noun is masculine or feminine.
   b. Memorizing the genitive case may be the only way you will recognize a given noun when it is used in a Bible passage. This is true because all the cases (other than the nominative singular) have the same stem as the genitive.

B. The form of these nouns

1. Here is a masculine and feminine noun of this type. The endings are in the first column. Note that the endings are the same for both nouns, but the articles are different because one is masculine and the other is feminine.

Case and Number	Ending	Masculine Noun	Feminine Noun
Nominative singular	---	ὁ ἀνήρ ("man")	ἡ γυνή ("woman")
Genitive singular	-ος	τοῦ ἀνδρός	τῆς γυναικός
Dative singular	-ι	τῷ ἀνδρί	τῇ γυναικί
Accusative singular	-α	τόν ἄνδρα	τήν γυναῖκα
Nominative plural	-ες	οἱ ἄνδρες	αἱ γυναῖκες
Genitive plural	-ων	τῶν ἀνδρῶν	τῶν γυναικῶν
Dative plural	-σι	τοῖς ἀνδράσι	ταῖς γυναιξί
Accusative plural	-ας	τούς ἄνδρας	τάς γυναῖκας

N.B. The form γυναικσί (feminine dative plural), which is difficult to pronounce, changes to γυναιξί.

C. The Function of the Cases

- The function or use of each of the cases (nominative, genitive, dative, accusative) is the same as the nouns you learned earlier.

D. Vocabulary

All of these nouns are used fifty or more times in the New Testament.

ὁ πατήρ, πατρός	father	ἡ σάρξ, σαρκός	flesh
ἡ χάρις, χάριτος	grace	ἡ νύξ, νυκτός	night
ὁ ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός	man	ὁ πούς, ποδός	foot
ἡ γυνή, γυναικός	woman	ἡ μήτηρ, μητρός	mother
ἡ χείρ, χειρός	hand	ἡ ἐλπίς, ἐλπίδος	hope
ὁ αἰών, αἰώνος	age, world, eternity		

Exercises - Lesson 19

A. Practice With the Endings of These Nouns

- Write the corresponding singular or plural form for each of these nouns. For example, the first word νυκτα is accusative singular. You are to write the accusative plural in the blank alongside this word.

νύκτα		ποδός	
	πατέρας		μητέρας
	αἰώνων	νυκτός	
χάριτος			ἀνδρῶν

ἀνήρ		αἰών	
	γυναῖκες		πόδας
χεῖρα		γυναικί	´
	ἐλπίδες		χάριτες
	σαρξί	νυκτός	

B. Translation and Review of Verb and Noun Forms

- Translate each sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions on each word form.

1.
ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ ἔβλεψα τὸν δούλον τῆς μητρός.

a. What tense is ἔβλεψα?

b. What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

c. What case is τῇ νυκτὶ?

d. Why is it this case in this sentence?

e. What case is τὸν δούλον?

f. Why is it this case in this sentence?

g. What case is τῆς μητρός?

h. Why is it this case in this sentence?

2.
ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐσθίει τὸν ἄρτον τῇ χειρί.

a. What case is ὁ ἀνὴρ?

b. Why is it this case in this sentence?

c. What tense is ἐσθίει?

d. What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

e. What case is τὸν ἄρτον?

f. Why is it this case in this sentence?

g. What case is τῇ χειρί?

h. Why is it this case in this sentence?

3.
ἡ χάρις θεοῦ βασιλεύσει ἐν καρδίαις ἀνδρῶν εἰς αἰώνα.

a. What tense is βασιλεύσει?

b. What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

c. What case is ἡ χάρις? Why?

d. What case is θεοῦ? Why?

e. What case is καρδίαις? Why?

f. What case is ἀνδρῶν? Why?

g. What case is αἰώνα? Why?

C. Translation of Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each verb form and the case above each noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction) or "adv" (adverb) above these kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. Luke 13:13

ἐπέθηκεν	τῇ γυναικὶ	τὰς χεῖρας	καὶ	εὐθὺς	ἀνωρθώθη
He put					she was healed

καὶ ἐδόξαζεν τὸν θεόν.

a. What does the case of each of these nouns indicate about its use in this sentence?
   - τῇ γυναικι
   - τὰς χεῖρας
   - τὸν θεόν

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἐδόξαζεν?

2. 1 Corinthians 4:15

οὐ	ἔχετε	πολλοὺς	πατέρας	γὰρ	διὰ	τοῦ εὐαγγελίου	ἐγὼ	ἐγέννησα	ὑμας.
Not		many					I	gave birth	to you.

a. What does the case of each of these nouns indicate about its use in this sentence?
- πατέρας

- τοῦ εὐαγγελίου

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἔχετε?

c. The verb ἐγέννησα is aorist. What two things indicate it is this tense?

3. Galatians 2:20

οὐκέτι	ζῶ	δὲ	ὃ	νῦν	ζῶ	ἐν	σαρκὶ,	ζῶ
No longer		but	what					

ἐν	πίστει	τοῦ υἱοῦ	τοῦ θεοῦ.
	faith		

a. The verb ζῶ (three times) is the present, 1st person singular, of ζάω. What kind of action is Paul indicating by the use of this tense in this verse?

b. What does the case of each of these nouns indicate about its use in this sentence?
- σαρκὶ

- πίστει = dative

c. The words τοῦ υἱοῦ are an objective genitive. Explain.

d. What kind of genitive is τοῦ θεοῦ?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the nouns in part D of this lesson.
3. Remember in learning these nouns to give special attention to the article (which is the only way you will know the gender of each noun) and to the genitive case (which gives you the stem for all of the other cases in the singular and plural).
4. Memorize the endings for this second form of masculine and feminine nouns.

Lesson Twenty

Unit D. Noun Cases

Lesson 13 Nominative Case
Lesson 14 Accusative Case
Lesson 15 Dative Case (indirect object, adverbial)
Lesson 16 Genitive Case (possessive, subjective and objective)
Lesson 17 Feminine Nouns
Lesson 18 Neuter Nouns
Lesson 19 Another Form of Masculine and Feminine Nouns
Lesson 20 Another Form of Neuter Nouns
Lesson 21 Unusual Forms of Nouns

A. Some things to Note about these Neuter Nouns

1. In Lesson 18, we learned a form that neuter nouns take in Greek.
2. Now we will see another form of neuter nouns in Greek.
3. You will note that these neuter nouns have the same ending in some of the cases as the masculine and feminine nouns we studied in chapter 19. These neuter nouns have the same endings in the genitive and dative cases (both singular and plural).
4. However, they have different endings in the nominative and accusative cases.
5. Another thing to note is that the form of the singular nominative and accusative cases are the same. And the endings of the plural nominative and accusative cases are the same.
6. The articles are the same as the neuter nouns learned in Lesson 18.

B. The Form of these Nouns

- The endings are in the first column; then an example of a neuter noun of this type.

Nominative singular	---	τὸ σῶμα (“body”)
Genitive singular	-ος	τοῦ σώματος
Dative singular	-ι	τῷ σώματι
Accusative singular	---	τὸ σῶμα
Nominative plural	-α	τὰ σώματα
Genitive plural	-ων	τῶν σωμάτων
Dative plural	-σι	τοῖς σώμασι*
Accusative plural	-α	τὰ σώματα

*The form σώματσι (neuter dative plural), which is difficult to pronounce, shortens to σώμασι.

C. The function of the cases

- The function or use of each of the cases (nominative, genitive, dative, accusative) is the same as the nouns learned earlier.

D. Vocabulary

All of these nouns are used 50 or more times in the New Testament.

τὸ πνεῦμα, πνεύματος	spirit	τὸ ὄνομα, ὀνόματος	name
τὸ σῶμα, σώματος	body	τὸ αἷμα, αἵματος	blood
τὸ στόμα, στόματος	mouth	τὸ ὕδωρ, ὕδατος	water
τὸ πῦρ, πυρός	fire	τὸ φῶς, φωτός	light
τὸ ῥήμα, ῥήματος	word, saying	τὸ θέλημα, θελήματος	will

Exercises - Lesson 20

A. Practice With the Endings of These Nouns

- Write the corresponding singular or plural form for each of these nouns. For example, the first word πῦρ is accusative singular. You are to write the accusative plural in the blank alongside this word.

	σώμασι	πνεύματος	
	ὕδασι		στόματα (acc)
	σωμάτων	ὄνομα (acc)	
φωτός			θελημάτων
στόματι		πνεῦμα (acc)	
	θελήματα (acc)		φῶτα (nom)
αἷμα (nom)		ῥήματι	
	πνεύματα (nom)		αἵματα (acc)

B. Translation and Review of Verb and Noun Forms

- Translate each sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions on each word form.

1.

τὸ φῶς τοῦ πνεύματος βασιλεύσει ἐν ταῖς καρδίαις τῶν ἀνθρώπων.

a. What case is τὸ φῶς?

b. Why is it this case in this sentence?

c. What case is τοῦ πνεύματος?

d. Why is it this case in this sentence?

e. What tense is βασιλεύσει?

f. What kind of action does this tense indicate?

g. What case is ταῖς καρδίαις?

h. Why is it this case in this sentence?

i. What case is τῶν ἀνθρώπων?

j. Why is it this case in this sentence?

2.

τὸ πνεῦμα ἐδίδαξε τὴν ἀλήθειαν περὶ τοῦ σώματος καὶ τοῦ αἵματος τοῦ κυρίου.

a. What case is τὸ πνεῦμα in this sentence? Why?

b. What tense is ἐδίδαξε?

c. What kind of action is indicated by this tense in this sentence?

d. What case is τὴν ἀλήθειαν in this sentence? Why?

e. What case are τοῦ σώματος and τοῦ αἵματος in this sentence? Why?

f. What case is τοῦ κυρίου in this sentence? Why?

3.
εὐθὺς ὁ ὄχλος ἐβάλλει ὕδωρ ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ.

a. What kind of word is εὐθὺς?

b. Explain how it modifies ἐβάλλει.

c. What tense is ἐβάλλει?

d. What kind of action is indicated by this tense in this sentence?

e. What case is ὕδωρ in this sentence? Why?

f. What case are both τῷ πυρὶ and τῷ ἱερῷ? Why?

C. Translation of Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each verb form or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction) or "adv" (adverb) or "prep" (preposition) above these kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. 1 John 1:7

<u>τὸ αἷμα</u>	Ἰησοῦ	<u>τοῦ υἱοῦ</u>	αὐτοῦ	καθαρίζει	ἡμᾶς	<u>ἀπὸ</u>	πάσης	<u>ἁμαρτίας.</u>
	of Jesus		of him	cleans	us		every	

a. What case is each of these words in this sentence? Explain why each is in this case.
- τὸ αἷμα
- τοῦ υἱοῦ
- ἁμαρτίας

2. Matthew 1:21

καλέσεις	τὸ ὄνομα	αὐτοῦ	Ἰησοῦν	γὰρ	σώσει	τὸν λαὸν	αὐτου
		of him	Jesus,				his

ἀπὸ	τῶν ἁμαρτιῶν	αὐτῶν.
		their.

a. What tense are both καλέσεις and σώσει?

b. What kind of action does this tense indicate in this sentence?

c. What case is each of these nouns and why is each this case in this sentence?
- τὸ ὄνομα
- τὸν λαὸν
- τῶν ἁμαρτιῶν

3. John 1:13

τέκνα	θεοῦ	ἐγεννήθησαν	οὐκ	ἐκ	θελήματος	ἀνδρὸς	ἀλλ'	ἐκ	θεοῦ.
		were given birth	not				but		

a. What case is each of these nouns and why is each this case in this sentence?
- τέκνα
- θεοῦ
- θελήματος
- ἀνδρὸς
- θεοῦ (at the end of the sentence)

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the nouns in part D of this lesson.
3. Remember in learning these nouns to give special attention to the article (which is the only way you will know the gender of each noun) and to the genitive case (which gives you the stem for most of the other cases in the singular and plural).
4. Memorize the nominative and accusative endings for this second form of neuter nouns.

Lesson Twenty-One

Unit D. Noun Cases

Lesson 13 Nominative Case
Lesson 14 Accusative Case
Lesson 15 Dative Case (indirect object, adverbial)
Lesson 16 Genitive Case (possessive, subjective and objective)
Lesson 17 Feminine Nouns
Lesson 18 Neuter Nouns
Lesson 19 Another Form of Masculine and Feminine Nouns
Lesson 20 Another Form of Neuter Nouns
Lesson 21 Nouns With Unusual Forms

A. Some Examples of Nouns with Similar Unusual Forms

1. In this unit (Unit D), we have learned two forms that nouns take in Greek. Lessons 13-18 presented one form. Lessons 19-20 presented a second form.
2. The nouns in Greek with unusual forms follow the general pattern of the second form of the nouns that we learned in Lessons 19 and 20. But they have some forms that are different, especially in the singular.
3. A couple examples of this kind of noun are πίστις ("faith") and πόλις ("city"):

ἡ	πίστις	ἡ	πόλις
τῆς	πίστεως	τῆς	πόλεως
τῇ	πίστει	τῇ	πόλει
τὴν	πίστιν	τὴν	πόλιν
(πίστις is not used in the plural in the New Testament)		αἱ	πόλεις
		τῶν	πόλεων
		ταῖς	πόλεσι
		τὰς	πόλεις

4. Note that the genitive, dative, and accusative singular, and the accusative plural are all different from the pattern of the nouns in Lessons 19 and 20.
5. It would be good to memorize the singular forms of either πίστις or πόλις since these nouns are used very often in the New Testament and there are other nouns of this same type.

B. Some Examples of Nouns with Individual Unusual Forms

1. There are also nouns that follow the general pattern of the second form of nouns in Lessons 19 and 20, but then have individual forms that are different.

2. Here are some examples with the forms that are different in bold type and underlined:
a. ἡ χάρις (“grace, undeserved kindness”)

ἡ χάρις
τῆς χάριτος
τῇ χάριτι
τὴν **<u>χάριν</u>**

b. ὁ βασιλεύς (“king”)

ὁ βασιλεύς
τοῦ βασιλέως
τῷ **<u>βασιλεῖ</u>** (changed from βασιλέϊ)
τὸν βασιλέα

οἱ **<u>βασιλεῖς</u>** (changed from βασιλέες)
τῶν βασιλέων
τοῖς βασιλευσι
τοὺς βασιλέας

c. τὸ γένος (“descendants, family, nation, kind of people”)

τὸ γένος
τοῦ **<u>γένους</u>** (changed from γένεος)
τῷ γένει
τὸ γένος

τὰ **<u>γένη</u>** (changed from γένεα)
τῶν γένεων or τῶν γένων
τοῖς γένεσι
τὰ **<u>γένη</u>**

3. The nouns in 2 a, b, and c above need not be memorized, but it is important to note that unusual forms such as these appear at times in nouns of this type.

C. Vocabulary

ἡ πίστις, -εως	faith	ἡ πόλις, -εως	city
ὁ βασιλεύς, -εως	king	ὁ ἱερεύς, -εως	priest
τὸ γένος, -ους	descendants, family, nation, kind of people		
ἡ χάρις, χάριτος	grace, undeserved kindness		

Four more nouns of the first type of feminine nouns learned in lesson 17:

ἡ ἐκκλησία, -ας	church	ἡ ὥρα, -ας	hour
ἡ ἐξουσία, -ας	authority	ἡ χάρα, -ας	joy

Exercises – Lesson 21

A. Practice with the endings of nouns of all kinds.

- This exercise includes nouns with the two basic forms and nouns with unusual forms.
- Write the corresponding singular or plural form for each of these nouns. For example, the first word, πόλει, is dative singular. You are to write the dative plural in the blank alongside this word.

πόλει	
	γένεων
βασιλέα	
	ὥραις
ἱερεύς	
	λόγους
ἐκκλησίας	
	χάραι

B. Translation and review of syntax

- Translate each sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions on each word form.

1.
ὁ βασιλεύς ἐκέλευσε τὸν ἱερέα θύειν ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ.

a. What tense is ἐκέλευσε? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

b. What kind of word is θύειν? Explain its use in this sentence.

c. What tense is θύειν? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

d. What case is each of these nouns? Explain why it is that case in each instance.
- βασιλεύς

- ἱερέα

- ἱερῷ

2.
ἡ πίστις τῶν ἀποστόλων ηὔξανε ὅτι ἤκουσαν τὸν εὐαγγέλιον θεοῦ.

a. What tense is ηὔξανε? What does this tense indicate about the faith of the apostles?

b. What tense is ἤκουσαν? What does this tense indicate about the hearing of the apostles?

c. What case is each of these nouns? Explain why it is this case in each instance.
- πίστις

- εὐαγγέλιον

d. Explain what kind of genitive each of these nouns is:
- τῶν ἀποστόλων

- θεοῦ

C. Translation of Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each verb form or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction) or "adv" (adverb) or "prep" (preposition) above these kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. Galatians 2:16

ἄνθρωπος	οὐ	δικαιοῦται	ἐκ	ἔργων	νόμου	ἐὰν μὴ	
	is not	justified				but	

διὰ	πίστεως	Ἰησοῦ	Χριστοῦ.
		in Jesus	Christ.

a. What case is ἄνθρωπος? Why is it this case in this sentence?

b. What case are ἔργων and πίστεως? Why are they this case in this sentence?

c. The word νόμου is a descriptive genitive. Explain.

d. The words Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ are an objective genitive. Explain.

2. Mark 13:32

Περὶ	τῆς ἡμέρας	ἢ	τῆς ὥρας	οὐδεὶς	οἶδεν,	οὐδὲ	οἱ ἄγγελοι
		or		no one	knows	not	

ἐν	οὐρανῷ	οὐδὲ	ὁ υἱός.
		nor	

a. What case is ἡμέρας and ὥρας? Why are they this case in this sentence?

b. What case are ἄγγελοι and υἱός? Why are they this case in this sentence?

c. What case is οὐρανῷ? Why is it this case in this sentence?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the nouns in part C of this lesson.
3. Memorize the singular forms of either πίστις or πόλις.

Lesson Twenty-Two

Unit E. Noun Modifiers

Lesson 22 Adjectives
Lesson 23 Relative Clauses
Lesson 24 Descriptive Genitive
Lesson 25 Articles

A. Meaning of Adjectives

1. An adjective is something that modifies or describes a noun. (e.g. In English if I talk about a "short" man or a "tall" man, the adjectives tell you I'm talking about more than just a man. These adjectives indicate I'm also saying something about the height of the man.)
2. An adjective can be just one word that modifies or describes a person or thing.
3. In later chapters, we will learn other forms that an adjective can take such as an adjectival phrase or clause.
4. The one word adjective καλός means "good" or "beautiful." When this word modifies a word like "deed, work" (ἔργον), it tells us the writer is talking about a certain kind of deed or work, namely, a deed that is good or beautiful.
5. So, τὸ καλὸν ἔργον is translated "the good deed."
6. Note that the adjective καλόν is placed between the article τό and the noun ἔργον. Note also that the adjective and the noun have the same ending. Both of these things help us know that the adjective καλόν modifies the noun ἔργον.

B. The Form of One Word Adjectives

1. One word adjectives have masculine, feminine, and neuter endings in all the cases, both the singular and the plural.
2. The adjective will have a masculine ending if the noun it modifies is masculine, a feminine ending if the noun it modifies is feminine, and a neuter ending if the noun it modifies is neuter.
3. The adjective will also have an ending that is the same case and number as the noun it modifies (i.e. the adjective will have a genitive plural ending if the noun it modifies is genitive plural, dative singular if the noun it modifies is dative singular, etc.).
4. We learned that nouns come in two forms. One form includes nouns like ὁ λόγος (masculine), ἡ ἀγάπη or δόξα (feminine), and τὸ ἔργον (neuter). The other form includes nouns like ὁ ἀνήρ (masculine), ἡ χάρις (feminine), and τὸ πνεῦμα.
5. Adjectives have only one form of endings, not two. The endings of adjectives are all the same as the first form of nouns (λόγος, ἀγάπη or δόξα, ἔργον).

6. So, if the noun an adjective modifies is from the first form of nouns, the ending of the adjective will match the ending of the noun exactly. For example: τοῦ καλοῦ λογοῦ, τὴν καλὴν ἀγάπην, τοῖς καλοῖς ἔργοις.
7. If the noun is from the second form of nouns, however, the ending of the adjective will not always match the ending of the noun exactly since the adjective will have the ending from the first form of nouns. For example: τοῦ καλοῦ ἄνδρος, τῇ καλῇ χάριτι, τοῖς καλοῖς πνεύμασι.

C. Unusual Forms of Adjectives

1. When an adjective is listed in the vocabulary for you to memorize, it will usually be listed with three endings – masculine, feminine, and neuter (e.g. καλός, καλή, καλόν).
2. Some adjectives, however, have only two forms – masculine and neuter, for example, αἰώνιος, αἰώνιον ("eternal"). In this case, the masculine forms are also used to modify feminine nouns. Like this:

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
ὁ αἰώνιος λόγος	ἡ αἰώνιος δόξα	τὸ αἰώνιον πνεῦμα
τοῦ αἰωνίου λόγου	τῆς αἰωνίου δόξης	τοῦ αἰωνίου πνεύματος
τῷ αἰωνίῳ λόγῳ	τῇ αἰωνίῳ δόξῃ	τῷ αἰωνίῳ πνεύματι
τὸν αἰώνιον λόγον	τὴν αἰώνιον δόξην	τὸ αἰώνιον πνεῦμα
οἱ αἰωνίοι λόγοι	αἱ αἰωνίοι δόξαι	τὰ αἰώνια πνεύματα
τῶν αἰωνίων λόγων	τῶν αἰωνίων δόξων	τῶν αἰωνίων πνευμάτων
τοῖς αἰωνίοις λόγοις	ταῖς αἰωνίοις δόξαις	τοῖς αἰωνίοις πνεύμασι
τοὺς αἰωνίους λόγους	τὰς αἰωνίους δόξας	τὰ αἰωνία πνεύματα

3. Some adjectives will have three forms listed but the singular masculine and neuter forms will not be -ος and -ον. A couple examples are: μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα ("large"), and πολύς, πόλλη, πόλυ ("much, many").
   a. In this case, the second form listed, the feminine form, gives the stem for most of the forms in the singular and plural. Like this:

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα	πολλοῖ	πολλαῖ	πολλά
μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλα	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά

   b. Note that the neuter nominative and accusative forms (as usual), in both the singular and plural, are the same.

c. Note also that the masculine accusative singular form in this kind of adjective does not follow the pattern of the other cases in the masculine. Instead the stem is the same as the nominative singular with a -ν ending.

N. B. As with the unusual forms of nouns that we looked at in Lesson 21, these unusual adjective forms are not listed for you to memorize. They are listed only to make you aware of the fact that there will be some unusual forms that adjectives will take. As was noted above, what will alert you to adjectives that have unusual forms is either that the adjective has only two endings or that the endings do not follow the usual -ος, -η, -ον pattern.

D. Vocabulary

πολύς, πολλή, πολύ	much, many	μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	large
αἰώνιος, -ον	eternal	ἅγιος, -α, -ον	holy
πρῶτος, -η, -ον	first	νεκρός, -ά, -όν	dead
ἴδιος, -α, -ον	one's own	μόνος, -α, -ον	only, alone
ὅσος, -η, -ον	so much, so great	ὅλος, -η, -ον	whole
ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν	good (useful)	καλός, -ή, -όν	good (beautiful)

Exercises - Chapter 22

A. Practice with the Endings of Adjectives and Nouns

- Put the corresponding form in the box alongside each item. For example, the first item is a dative singular. Put the dative plural form of the article, adjective, and noun alongside it.

τῇ ἰδίᾳ ἁμαρτίᾳ	
	τοὺς πολλούς καρπούς
τοῦ αἰωνίου πνεύματος	
	τὰ ἀγαθὰ ἔργα
τὸ νεκρὸν σῶμα	
	τοῖς ἰδίοις ἀνδράσι
τὴν μεγάλην βασιλείαν	
	τῶν μόνων ῥημάτων
ἡ ἁγία πόλις	
	οἱ πρώτοι ἀποστόλοι
τῷ καλῷ οἰκῷ	
	ταῖς αἰωνίοις ἡμέραις

B. Translation and review of syntax

- Translate each sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions on each word form.

1.
ὁ πρῶτος βασιλεύς ἠλευθέρωσε τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς δούλους διὰ ἰδίου λόγου.

a. What tense is ἠλευθέρωσε? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

b. What case is each of these nouns? Why is it this case in this sentence?
- βασιλεύς

- δούλους

- λόγου

2.
ὅτε τὰ μεγάλα πυρὰ ηὐξάνον τὰ πυρὰ τεθύκασι τὰς καλὰς πόλεις.

a. What case is πυρὰ in both instances? Why is this case in both instances?

b. What tense is ηὐξάνον? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

c. The verb τεθύκασι is perfect tense.
- Explain the action that was completed.

- Explain the ongoing result of this completed action.

d. What case is τὰς καλὰς πόλεις? Why is it this case in this sentence?

C. Translation of a Bible Passage

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense or case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction), or "adv" (adverb), or "prep" (preposition) above a word if it is one of these three kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. Mark 1:8

ἐβάπτισα	ὑμᾶς	ὕδατι.	βαπτίσει	ὑμᾶς	ἐν	ἁγίῳ	πνεύματι.
	you			you			

a. What kind of action does the tense of ἐβάπτισα indicate?

b. How does the action of the verb βαπτίσει differ from the action of ἐβάπτισα?

c. How does ὕδατι modify the verb ἐβάπτισα?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the adjectives in part D of this lesson.

Lesson Twenty-Three

Unit E. Noun Modifiers

Lesson 22 Adjectives
Lesson 23 Relative Clauses
Lesson 24 Descriptive Genitive
Lesson 25 Articles

A. The Form of Relative Clauses

1. A clause has a subject and a verb, but the subject and verb are not the main subject and main verb in the sentence.
2. A relative clause has a subject and a verb and begins with a relative pronoun.
3. Here is a list of the masculine, feminine, and neuter relative pronouns in the singular and plural:

ὅς	ἥ	ὅ
οὗ	ἧς	οὗ
ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ
ὅν	ἥν	ὅ
οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
οὕς	ἅς	ἅ

4. Note two things:
   a. The relative pronouns are the same as the endings of the first form of nouns.
   b. The breathing marks indicate that an "h" sound must be put at the front of each relative pronoun (cf. Breathing Marks, Lesson 2).

B. The Use of Relative Clauses

1. A relative clause can take the place of a one-word noun in a sentence.
   a. For example: Matthew 20:27

ὅς	ἄν	θέλῃ	εἶναι	πρῶτος	ἐν	ὑμῖν	ἔσται	ὑμῶν	δοῦλος.
Who-	ever	wants	to be	first	among	you	will be	your	slave.

b. The clause "Whoever wants to be first among you" is a relative clause. It has a subject and a verb and begins with a relative pronoun (ὅς).

c. The whole clause, "Whoever wants to be first among you…," is the subject of the main verb "will be" instead of a one-word noun (noun relative clause).

2. More often a relative clause modifies/describes a noun in the sentence.
   a. In this case a relative clause serves as an adjective (adjectival relative clause).
   b. For example: Matthew 2:9

ὁ ἀστήρ,	**ὃν**	εἶδον	ἐν τῇ ἀνατολῇ,	προῆγεν	αὐούς.
The star,	which	they saw	in the east,	went ahead of	them.

   c. The clause, "which they saw in the east," describes the star that went ahead of them.

3. The relative pronoun that begins the relative clause usually has the same gender and number as the noun the relative clause modifies. Since the noun ὁ ἀστήρ in Matthew 2:9 is masculine singular, the relative pronoun beginning the relative clause (ὃν) is also masculine singular.

4. The case of the relative pronoun that begins the relative clause will not always be the same case as the noun that the relative clause modifies. How the relative pronoun is used in the relative clause will determine its case.
   a. The relative pronoun might be the subject or object of the verb in the clause, or it might be the object of a preposition in the clause, etc.
   b. In Matthew 2:9 (cf. above under #2-b), the relative pronoun ὃν is the object of the verb εἶδον. So the relative pronoun is in the accusative case while the noun that the relative clause modifies, ὁ ἀστήρ, is nominative case (since it is the subject of the verb προῆγεν).

5. Here are two more examples of relative adjectival clauses. In each one, the relative pronoun is the same gender and number as the noun the relative clause modifies. Note in each case, however, that the relative pronoun is a different case:
   a. Romans 2:29

ὁ	ἐν	τῷ κρυπτῷ	Ἰουδαῖος	[ἐστιν]	**οὗ**	ὁ ἔπαινος	[ἐστιν]	ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ.
The	in	secret	Jew	is	the one whose	praise	is	from God.

N.B. οὗ is the same number and gender as Ἰουδαῖος. But because it expresses possession in the clause, it is genitive case rather than nominative like Ἰουδαῖος.

   b. John 1:47

Ἴδε	[ἐστιν]	ἀληθῶς	Ἰσραηλίτης	ἐν	**ᾧ**	οὐκ ἔστιν	δόλος.
See	he is	truly	an Israelite	in	whom	there is not	deceit.

N.B. ᾧ is the same number and gender as Ἰσραηλίτης. It is the object of the preposition ἐν in the clause, so it is dative case rather than nominative like Ἰσραηλίτης.

C. Vocabulary

ἕτερος, -α, -ον	other	μέσος, -η, -ον	middle
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον	each	λοιπός, -ή, -όν	remaining
δίκαιος, -α, -ον	upright, acquitted	κακός, -ή, -όν	evil (ugly)
πονηρός, -ά, -όν	evil (harmful)	ἔσχατος, -η, -ον	last
πιστός, -ή, -όν	faithful	μακάριος, -α, -ον	blessed
ἀγαπητός, -ή, -όν	loved	τυφλός, -ή, -όν	blind

Exercises - Lesson 23

A. Translation

- Translate the sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions on each word form.

1.
ὁ θεὸς ὅς ἔπεμψε τὸν υἱὸν ἔθελεν ἐλευθερεῖν τοὺ κόσμον ἀπὸ ἁμαρτίας.

a. How does the relative clause describe God?

b. What tense are each of these verbs? What kind of action is indicated in each case?
- ἔπεμψε

- ἔθελεν

c. What kind of infinitive is ἐλευθερεῖν? Explain.

d. What case is each of these nouns? Why is each this case in this sentence?
- υἱὸν

- κόσμον

- ἁμαρτίας

B. Practice with relative adjectival clauses

- Translate. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.
ἡ ἐκκλησία ἐν πόλει ἥν ὁ κύριος παρεκάλεσε ἐν πίστει.

a. Which noun is modified by the relative clause?

c. What does the relative clause tell us about this noun?

2.
ὁ οἶκος παρὰ τῷ λίθῳ ἐν ᾧ οἱ ἀποστόλοι ἐθεράπευον τὰ τέκνα.

a. Which noun is modified by the relative clause?

b. What does the relative clause tell us about this noun?

3.
πρὸ τοῦ τόπου ὅν ὁ ἀνὴρ ἔβλεψε παρὰ τῷ πυρί.

a. Which noun is modified by the relative clause?

b. What does the relative clause tell us about this noun?

C. Translation of Bible passages

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction), or "prep" (preposition), or "rel pro" (relative pronoun) above a word if it is one of these three kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. Mark 15:41

Ἦσαν	γυναῖκες	αἳ	ἠκολούθουν	αὐτῷ	ὅτε	ἦν	ἐν	τῇ Γαλιλαίᾳ.
There were			followed	him		he was		Galilee.

a. What case is αἳ? Why is it this case in this sentence?

b. What does the relative clause tell us about the women?

c. How does the clause ὅτε ἦν ἐν τῇ Γαλιλαίᾳ modify the verb ἠκολούθουν?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the adjectives in part C of this lesson.

Lesson Twenty-Four

Unit E. Noun Modifiers

Lesson 22 Adjectives
Lesson 23 Relative Clauses
Lesson 24 Descriptive Genitive
Lesson 25 Articles

A. Genitives as Adjectives

1. Earlier in Lesson 16, you learned that one of the uses of the genitive case is descriptive/adjectival.
2. What was said there in sub-point B,2,d is being repeated here in Unit E. This is being done in order to give special emphasis to the fact that one of the most frequent uses of the genitive is to modify/describe another noun.
3. A noun in the genitive case usually follows right after another noun in a sentence, and it often tells the reader what kind of person or thing that preceding noun is.

B. Several Types of Descriptive Genitives

(Repeated from Lesson 16, B, 2, d)

- A descriptive genitive may:

1. give a characteristic of the noun to which it is attached

Romans 7:24

σώματος	θανάτου
body	of death

- Kind of body?
"a death body", that is, a body that is characterized as dying.

2. give the contents of the noun to which it is attached

Mark 5:11

ἀγέλη	χοίρων
herd	of pigs

- Kind of herd?
"a pig herd", that is, a herd made up of pigs.

3. explain the noun to which it is attached
Acts 2:38

δωρεὰν τοῦ ἁγίου πνεύματος
the gift of the Holy Spirit

- Kind of gift?
The gift is the Holy Spirit.

4. give the source of the noun to which it is attached
Romans 3:22

δικαιοσύνη θεου
the acquittal of God

- Kind of acquittal?
"a God acquittal", that is, the acquittal that comes from God.

N.B. As shown beneath the examples above, it often helps to put the noun that is the descriptive genitive in front of the other noun to answer the question "What kind of…?" Then use the context to figure out the meaning.

C. Vocabulary

ἡ ψυχη, -ης	soul	ἡ ἐντολή, -ης	command
ἡ ἐπαγγελία, -ας	promise	ἡ θάλασσα, -ης	sea
ἡ δικαιοσύνη, -ης	acquittal, righteousness	ἡ γραφή, -ης	writing, Scripture

Exercises - Lesson 24

A. Translation and Syntax Exercise

- Translate the sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence

1.
τὰ ἔργα τῆς σαρκὸς ἔχει τὸν καρπὸν τοῦ θανάτου.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is it this case in this sentence?
- τὰ ἔργα

- τὸν καρπὸν

b. What tense is ἔχει? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

c. Τῆς σαρκὸς is a subjective genitive. Explain.

d. Τοῦ θανάτου is a descriptive genitive. What does it tell us about καρπὸν?

2.
ἡ ἀλήθεια τοῦ εὐαγγελίου ἄγει ἀνθρώπους εἰς τὴν χάραν τοῦ οὐρανοῦ.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is it this case in this sentence?
- ἡ ἀλήθεια

- ἀνθρώπους

- τὴν χάραν

b. Τοῦ εὐαγγελίου and τοῦ οὐρανοῦ are descriptive genitives. Explain what each of these genitives tells us about the noun each modifies.
- τοῦ εὐαγγελίου

- τοῦ οὐρανοῦ

3.
τὸ πῦρ τῆς πιστέως ηὐξάνε ἐν ταῖς καρδίαις τοῦ ὄχλου τῶν ἱερεύων.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is it this case in this sentence?
- τὸ πῦρ

- ταῖς καρδίαις

b. What tense is ηὐξάνε? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

c. Τοῦ ὄχλου is a possessive genitive. Explain.

d. Τῆς πιστέως and τῶν ἱερεύων are descriptive genitives. Explain what each of these genitives tells us about the noun each modifies.
- τῆς πιστέως

- τῶν ἱερεύων

B. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words in part C of this lesson.

Lesson Twenty-Five

Unit E. Noun Modifiers

Lesson 22 Adjectives
Lesson 23 Relative Clauses
Lesson 24 Descriptive Genitive
Lesson 25 Articles

A. The Use of the Article in Greek

1. You may have noticed in previous lessons that sometimes nouns have an article and at other times they don't have an article.
2. When the article is used with a noun in Greek, it has a meaning. When there is no article used with a noun, this also has a meaning.
3. There are two main meanings if an article is used with a noun:
   a. Sometimes an article with a noun will indicate that anything and everything that fits in the category of the noun is meant (generic article).
      - We've learned that the word γυνή means "woman."
      - Therefore, a writer using an article with γυνή could be referring to anyone and everyone who is a woman, all women ("womankind").
        e.g. 1 Corinthians 11:10

διὰ	τοῦτο	ἡ γυνὴ	ὀφείλει	ἔχειν	ἐξουσίαν
Because of	this	any and every woman	ought	to have	authority

ἐπὶ τῆς κεφαλῆς.
on her head.

   b. Most often, however, an article with a noun will be pointing to one specific person or thing (specific article).
      - A writer using an article with γυνή will most often be referring to a certain, specific woman.
      - Almost always in Greek there will be a word or phrase that will modify the noun with a specific article. This modifier explains what is specific about this noun.
        e.g. John 4:9

λέγει	ἡ γυνὴ	ἡ Σαμαρῖτις,	Πῶς	σὺ	Ἰουδαῖος	αἰτεῖς
Says	the woman	the Samaritan one,	How is it	you	a Jew	ask for

πεῖν παρ' ἐμοῦ
a drink from me?

- To explain a little more, if I say to you, "Look at that woman over there." And you say, "Which woman do you mean? There are four women over there." Then I answer, "The tall woman with the red dress and the blonde hair." The modifiers I added (tall, red dress, blonde hair) explain the specific woman I am referring to.
- In Greek, if there is an article with a noun, look for a modifier in the context. This modifier will explain what is specific about this noun. Remember, noun modifiers are all the things that we have learned about in this unit, Unit E: adjectives, relative clauses, and descriptive genitives.
- Once in a while, a noun with a specific article will have no modifier in the context. Then the whole context will explain what is specific about the noun. Let's say that a passage is talking about what God did to save us. This context makes clear that the word ἡ χάρις refers to God's undeserved kindness, even though the modifier τοῦ θεοῦ ("of God, God's") is not used with ἡ χάρις as a modifier.
- Often the specific article has the meaning of "the one and only..." or "the well-known" person or thing.

4. There are also two main meanings if an article is not used with a noun.
   a. Sometimes the lack of an article simply indicates that the noun is indefinite.
      - So, γυνή with no article could show that the writer has no specific woman in mind. The woman could be any woman.

        e.g. 1 Timothy 2:11

γυνὴ	ἐν ἡσυχίᾳ	μανθανέτω	ἐν	πάσῃ	ὑποταγῇ.
A woman	in silence	let her learn	in	total	submission

   b. More often, however, in the New Testament, the article is dropped from a noun which is specific. In this case, the lack of the article shows that the writer is stressing the quality or basic essence of that noun.

        e.g. Luke 8:43

γυνὴ	οὖσα ἐν	ῥύσει	αἵματος	ἀπο	ἐτῶν	δώδεκα
A woman	who had a	flow	of blood	for	years	twelve

ἥψατο	τοῦ ἱματίου.
touched	his garment.

        N.B. The woman is a specific woman because she is described as the woman who had a flow of blood for twelve years. Luke drops the article to stress the fact that she is a woman (her quality or basic essence) to call attention to the fact that her ailment was the kind a woman has (not a man).

5. Note that the use of the article with a specific noun or the lack of an article with a specific noun doesn't change the meaning of the noun itself. It just gives a little different emphasis to the meaning of that noun. One emphasizes that the noun is a specific person or thing. The other emphasizes the basic quality or essence of that noun. Here is an example of these differences in emphasis using the noun χάρις.

        Titus 2:11

ἡ χάρις	τοῦ θεοῦ	ἐπεφάνη	σωτήριος	πᾶσιν	ἀνθρώποις.
The grace	of God	appeared	delivering salvation	to all	people.

N.B. “Grace” has an article and a modifier (“of God”) indicating which specific “grace” is meant. So the article emphasizes this is the special grace that God showed in sending Jesus. The world has never known another grace like this.

1 Peter 4:10

ἕκαστος	καθὼς	ἔλαβεν	χάρισμα	ὡς	οἰκονόμοι	χάριτος	θεοῦ.
Each one	as	he received	a gift [use it]	as	ministers	of the grace	of God.

N.B. “Grace” is specific because it is identified as the grace “of God.” The lack of the article puts the stress on the quality of grace, namely, that it is a free gift, not something earned. The ministers of God have the wonderful work of distributing God’s free gift to people.

B. The Form of the Article

- The endings of the article are the same as the endings of the first form of nouns.

ὁς	ἡ	τό	οἱ	αἱ	τά
τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
τῷ	τῇ	τῷ	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
τόν	τήν	τό	τούς	τάς	τά

C. Vocabulary

οὐ, οὐκ, μή	no, not	ὁ Ἰησοῦς, -οῦ	Jesus
ὁ Χριστός, -οῦ	Christ	ἡ δικαιοσύνη, -ης	acquittal, righteousness

do, make	ποιέω	ποιήσω	ἐποίουν	ἐποίησα	πεποίηκα
worship, bow down	προσκυνέω	προσκυνήσω	προσεκύνουν	προσεκύνησα	---
gather	συνάγω	συνάξω	συνήγον	συνήγαγον	συνήχθην
save	σῴζω	σώσω	ἔσωζον	ἔσωσα	σέσωκα
hold on to, keep	τηρέω	τηρήσω	ἐτήρουν	ἐτήρησα	τετήρηκα
go away, withdraw	ὑπάγω	ὑπάξω	ὑπήγον	ὑπήγαγον	---

Exercises - Chapter 25

A. Specific nouns with an article

- Following each noun with an article, indicate the type of modifier this noun has. Then explain how the modifier makes the noun specific.

Specific noun and modifier	Type of modifier	How the modifier makes the noun specific
ἡ μήτηρ ἥ μανθάνει	Relative clause	The specific mother is the one who is a teacher
τὸ τέκνον τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ		
ἡ μέση πόλις		
ὁ ἄγγελος τοῦ θεοῦ		
ὁ λίθος ὅ ἔπεσε		
ὁ ετερος υἱός		
ἡ ἀγάπη τοῦ ᾽Ιησοῦ		
ὁ νεκρὸς ἀνήρ		

B. Specific nouns with no article

- Each of the underlined nouns in the chart below is specific because it has a modifier.
- The author has dropped the article to stress the quality/basic essence of each noun.
- Explain the quality/basic essence of each noun (Hint: in some cases the quality of a noun can be explained by stating the opposite of the noun).

<u>ἀλήθεια</u> τοῦ λόγου	The quality of truth is that it is not a lie that deceives people.
<u>νομος</u> ὃν ἀκούεις	The quality of a law is that it requires people to do or not to do something.
<u>χάρις</u> τοῦ πνεύματος	
<u>ὄνομα</u> τοῦ ἀποστόλου	
<u>δούλος</u> τοῦ διδασκόλου	
πονηρὸν <u>πῦρ</u>	
<u>βασιλευς</u> ὅ ἐκέλευε	

κακὴ ἁμαρτία	
πίστις ὅν ὡμολογήσας	
ὄχλος μέγας	

C. Translation of Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense or case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction), or "prep" (preposition), or "rel pro" (relative pronoun) above a word if it is one of these three kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. John 8:40

νῦν	ζητεῖτε	ἀποκτεῖναι	με me	ὃς	τὴν ἀλήθειαν	ὑμῖν to you	λελάληκα

ἣν	ἤκουσα	παρὰ from	τοῦ θεοῦ.	

a. What does the word νῦν tell us about the action of the verb ζητεῖτε?

b. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of the verb ζητεῖτε?

c. What kind of infinitive is ἀποκτεῖναι?

d. Which word is modified by the relative clause ὃς τήν ἀλήθειαν ὑμῖν λελάληκα?

e. Why is the relative pronoun ὃς nominative case?

f. Answer these two questions about λελάληκα:
- What is the completed action?

- What are the results of this completed action?

g. What modifier is there in this sentence of the specific noun τήν ἀλήθειαν?

h. Which specific truth does this modifier explain as the one Jesus is talking about?

i. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἤκουσα?

j. Why is the relative pronoun ἣν in the accusative case?

k. Why is τοῦ θεοῦ in the genitive case?

2. Galatians 2:21

οὐκ ἀθετῶ	<u>τὴν χάριν</u>	<u>τοῦ θεοῦ</u>	γὰρ	εἰ	<u>δικαιοσύνη</u>	<u>διὰ</u>	<u>νόμου</u>,
I don't set aside			for	if			

ἄρα	Χριστὸς	δωρεὰν	ἀπέθανεν.
then	Christ	for nothing	died.

a. The article τὴν makes the noun χάριν specific. Show how the modifier of τὴν χάριν explains which specific χάριν is meant.

b. What kind of genitive is τοῦ θεοῦ? Explain.

c. The nouns δικαιοσύνη and νόμου do not have articles, but the context of this verse make it clear that both are specific. They are God's "acquittal" and God's "law." Explain the quality/basic idea of each noun that Paul is stressing by not using an article with either of these specific nouns.
- δικαιοσύνη

- νόμου

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words in part C of this lesson.

Lesson Twenty-Six

Unit F. Participles

Lesson 26 Adjectival (Attributive) Participles
Lesson 27 Adverbial Participles
Lesson 28 Complementary Participles

A. The Form of Participles

1. Participles are formed from verbs, but they have the endings of nouns and adjectives rather than verb endings. The noun/adjective endings will tell you that a given word is a participle, not a regular form of the verb.
2. Participles are formed from three tense stems: present, aorist, and perfect. Participles express the three kinds of action indicated by these tenses: ongoing, happened, and completed with an ongoing result.
   N.B. There are only a few future participles in the New Testament.
3. The endings of participles in the feminine gender are the same as the endings of the first form of nouns, but in the masculine and neuter genders they are the same as the endings of the second form of nouns.
4. The forms of the present participle (present stem of the verb + the endings):

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
θύων	θύουσα	θύον
θύοντος	θυούσης	θύοντος
θύοντι	θυούσῃ	θύοντι
θύοντα	θύουσαν	θύον
θύοντες	θύουσαι	θύοντα
θυόντων	θυουσῶν	θυόντων
θύουσι	θυούσαις	θύουσι
θύοντας	θυούσας	θύοντα

5. The forms of the aorist participle (aorist stem of the verb + σα + the endings):
   N.B. Note that the aorist participle does not have an augment at the beginning of each form.

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
θύσας	θύσασα	θῦσαν
θύσαντος	θυσάσης	θύσαντος
θύσαντι	θυσάσῃ	θύσαντι
θύσαντα	θύσασαν	θῦσαν

θύσαντες	θύσασαι	θύσαντα
θυσάντων	θυσασῶν	θυσάντων
θύσασι	θυσάσαις	θύσασι
θύσαντας	θυσάσας	θύσαντα

6. The forms of the perfect participle (reduplication + perfect stem + κ + ο or υι + endings):

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
τεθυκώς	τεθυκυῖα	τεθυκός
τεθυκότος	τεθυκυίας	τεθυκότος
τεθυκότι	τεθυκυίᾳ	τεθυκότι
τεθυκότα	τεθυκυῖαν	τεθυκός
τεθυκότες	τεθυκυίαι	τεθυκότα
τεθυκότων	τεθυκυιῶν	τεθυκότων
τεθυκόσι	τεθυκυίαις	τεθυκόσι
τεθυκότας	τεθυκυίας	τεθυκότα

2. Since the noun/adjective endings are the same in all three tenses of the participle, some keys to recognizing the tense of a participle are the stem, the letters -σα in the aorist form, and the reduplication plus the letter κ in the perfect form.

B. The Use of Participles

1. The three lessons of this unit indicate that participles have three uses.
2. The use of participles as adverbs and complements to verbs will be studied in the next two lessons.
3. In this lesson we will look at the use of a participle as an adjective.
   a. In Lesson 22,A,1, a one-word adjective was explained as a word that modifies or describes a noun. It gives a characteristic of a person or thing.
   b. A participle that is an adjective does this same thing.
4. If a participle has an article, it is always adjectival.
5. A good English translation for an adjectival participle is to use a relative clause (cf. Lesson 23).
   e.g. 2 Corinthians 7:6

ὁ θεὸς	ὁ παρακαλῶν	τοὺς ταπεινοὺς	παρεκάλεσεν	ἡμᾶς
God	who comforts	the downhearted	comforted	us.

6. However, a participle can also be adjectival if it doesn't have an article.
7. If a participle which doesn't have an article can be translated into English in the form of a relative clause, then it is adjectival. This is a good way to test a participle that doesn't have an article to see if it is adjectival.
   e.g. Mark 1:40

λεπρὸς	ἔρχεται	πρὸς	αὐτὸν	παρακαλῶν	αὐτὸν
A leper	comes	to	him	who was begging	him

καὶ	γονυπετῶν.
and	who was bending on his knees.

8. If a participle is best translated as a relative clause - but doesn't modify a noun in the sentence, then this participle serves as a noun. Though we call it a substantival participle, it stresses the characteristic of this noun like an adjectival participle does.
e.g. Acts 4:32

καρδία	καὶ	ψυχὴ	τοῦ πλήθους	τῶν πιστευσάντων	ἦν	μία.
The heart	and	soul	of the crowd	of those who believed	was	one.

N.B. This lesson on the adjectival participle could have been included in Unit E (Noun Modifiers). Adjectival participles describe nouns just like one word adjectives, relative clauses, and descriptive genitives do. However, since not all participles are adjectival participles, it was decided to include this lesson on adjectival participles in Unit F (Participles). This was done in order to emphasize the fact that participles can be used in a number of different ways, only one of which is adjectival.

C. Vocabulary

carry	φέρω	οἴσω	ἔφερον	ἤνεγκα	ἐνήνοχα
rejoice	χαίρω	---	ἔχαιρον	ἐχάρην	---
believe	πιστεύω	πιστεύσω	ἐπίστευον	ἐπιστευσα	πεπιστευκα

know	οἶδα (perfect tense form, present tense meaning)		ᾔδειν (pluperfect tense form, aorist tense meaning)
	οἶδας	2nd person singular	ᾔδεις
	οἶδεν	3rd person singular	ᾔδει
	οἴδαμεν	1st person plural	ᾔδειμεν
	οἴδατε	2nd person plural	ᾔδειτε
	οἴδασι	3rd person plural	ᾔδεισαν
	εἰδέναι	infinitive	-------(not used in the NT)
	εἰδώς, εἰδυῖα, εἰδός	participle	-------

Exercises - Lesson 26

A. Practice with Participles

- Give the tense, number and case of each participle.

ἀκουσάσαις	aorist	pl	dative
γράφοντα			
βεβληκότων			
διώκοντα			
λέξαντος			
μεμνηκυίᾳ			
παρακαλέσαντας			
πάσχον			
πεπομφκότι			
καθευδούσης			
βλέψας			
ὀνομάζουσι			

B. Translation and Syntax Exercise

- Translate the sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.

Τὸ τέκνον προσεκύνεσαν λίθον ἔμενε ἐν τῷ ἁγίῳ ἱερῷ.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is each this case in this sentence?

- τέκνον

- λίθον

- ἱερῷ

b. Answer these questions about προσεκύνεσαν.

- What case is it? Why?

- What tense is it? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

- It is used as an adjective. What does it tell us about the noun it modifies?

c. What tense is ἔμενε? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

d. What kind of word is ἁγίῳ? What does it tell us about the word it modifies?

2.
ἔλεξα τῇ γυναικὶ δουλευούσῃ τὸν διδάσκαλον τὸν πεπιστευκότα τὴν ἀλήθειαν.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is each this case in this sentence?
- τῇ γυναικὶ

- τὸν διδάσκαλον

- τὴν ἀλήθειαν

b. These two nouns have an article. What modifier in the sentence explains what is specific about each of these nouns?
- τῇ γυναικὶ

- τὸν διδάσκολον

c. The noun τὴν ἀλήθειαν has an article but no modifier in the sentence. The context makes it clear, however, that a specific ἀλήθειαν is meant. Explain.

d. Answer these questions about δουλευούσῃ.
- What case is it? Why?

- What tense is it? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

- It is used as an adjective. What does it tell us about the noun it modifies?

e. Answer these questions about τὸν πεπιστευκότα.
- What case is it? Why?

- What tense is it? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

- It is used as an adjective. What does it tell us about the noun it modifies?

C. Translation of Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense or case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction), or "prep" (preposition), or "rel pro" (relative pronoun) above a word if it is one of these three kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. Galatians 2:20

ζῶ	ἐν	πίστει	τοῦ υἱοῦ	τοῦ θεοῦ	τοῦ ἀγαπήσαντος	με.
I live						me.

a. What case is πίστει? Why is it this case in this sentence?

b. πίστει does not have an article, but it is specific. Why?

c. πίστει is specific but has no article. The author dropped the article to stress the quality or basic idea of πίστει. Explain the quality of πίστει that is being stressed.

d. The genitive τοῦ υἱοῦ is an objective genitive. Explain.

e. What kind of genitive is τοῦ θεοῦ? Explain.

f. Answer these questions about τοῦ ἀγαπήσαντος.

- What case is it? Why?

- What tense is it? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

- It is used as an adjective. What does it tell us about the noun it modifies?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words in part C of this lesson.

Lesson Twenty-Seven

Unit F. Participles

Lesson 26 Adjectival Participles
Lesson 27 Adverbial (Circumstantial) Participles
Lesson 28 Complementary Participles

A. The Form of Adverbial Participles

1. Adverbial participles sometimes have the same form as adjectival participles. Sometimes they do not.
2. Some adjectival participles have an article (Lesson 26,B,4). They are different from adverbial participles because adverbial participles never have an article.
3. Remember that often adjectival participles appear without an article (Lesson 26,B,6). These adjectival participles without an article have the same form as adverbial participles.
4. Note this carefully: Even though an adverbial participle has the same noun/adjective endings as adjectival participles, an adverbial participle modifies a verb rather than a noun.
5. The only way you can tell one from the other is by testing with a translation:
   a. An adjectival participle will translate best as a relative clause (Lesson 26,B,7).
   b. An adverbial participle will translate best as an adverbial clause (cf. Part B which follows).

B. The Use of Adverbial Participles

1. An adverbial participle modifies a verb in the sentence (even though it has a noun/adjective ending). It tells us something important about the action of the verb.
2. Like all the verb modifiers we studied in Unit C (adverbs; adverbial clauses; prepositions + an article + an infinitive), an adverbial participle can modify a verb in any one of a number of ways.
   N.B. This lesson on the adverbial participle could have been included in Unit C (Verb Modifiers). Adverbial participles add important information about the action of a verb just as one word adverbs, adverbial clauses, and prepositions + an article + an infinitive do. However, since not all participles are adverbial participles (cf. A above), it was decided to include this lesson on adverbial participles in Unit F (Participles). This was done in order to emphasize the fact that participles can be used in a number of different ways, only one of which is adverbial.
3. An adverbial participle can indicate:
   a. Why the action of the verb takes place (causal). e.g. Acts 9:26.

πάντες	ἐφοβοῦντο	αὐτὸν	μὴ πιστεύοντες	ὅτι	ἐστὶν	μαθητής.
All	were afraid of	him	since they didn't believe	that	he was	a disciple.

b. How the action of the verb takes place (manner). e.g. Acts 9:25.

οἱ μαθηταὶ	καθῆκαν	αὐτὸν	χαλάσαντες	ἐν	σπυρίδι.
The disciples	let down	him	by lowering him	in	a basket.

c. When the action of the verb takes place (temporal = 2 kinds).

- either what happens at the same time as the action of the verb, (accompanying circumstance) = always a present participle. e.g. Acts 10:27.

Πέτρος	συνομιλῶν	αὐτῷ	εἰσῆλθεν.
Peter,	at the same time as he was talking	with him,	entered [the room].

- or what happened before the action of the verb. (preliminary) = always an aorist participle. e.g. Acts 8:30.

προσδραμὼν	Φίλιππος	ἤκουσεν	αὐτοῦ	ἀναγινώσκοντος	Ἠσαΐαν.
After he ran up,	Philip	heard	him	reading	Isaiah.

d. In spite of what the action of the verb takes place (concessive). e.g. Acts 7:5.

ἐπηγγείλατο	δοῦναι	αὐτὴν	τῷ σπέρματι αὐτοῦ,	οὐκ ὄντος αὐτῷ	τέκνου.
[God] promised	to give	it	to his descendants,	even though he did not have	a child.

e. Two other types of adverbial participles are not used often in the NT:

- To express the purpose of the action of the verb.
- To express on what condition the action of the verb will take place.

C. Vocabulary

These words are used 50 or more times in the New Testament.

call	καλέω	καλήσω	ἐκάλουν	ἐκάλεσα	κέκληκα
speak	λαλέω	λαλήσω	ἐλάλουν	ἐλάλησα	λελάληκα
be about to	μέλλω	μελλήσω	ἔμελλον	-------	-------
die	ἀποθνῄσκω	-------	ἀπέθνῃσκον	ἀπέθανον	

παρά	alongside (preposition)	δύο	two
ὁ προφήτης, -ου	prophet	ὁ λαός, -οῦ	people
ἡ ψυχὴ, -ῆς	soul	ἡ ἐξουσία, -ας	authority

Exercises - Lesson 27

A. Practice with Participles

- Give the tense, number, and case of each participle.

ἁμαρτήσαντες			
ἀποκτείνουσι			
γεγραφκότι			
ἁρπάσασαν			
αὐξάνοντα			
βαπτίσασης			
δεδιδαχκυίαι			
δοκιμάζοντι			
κλειουσῶν			
ἐπιθυμήσαντι			

B. Translation and Syntax

- Translate the sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.

ὁ δούλος ἔχαιρε βλέψας τὴν οἰκίαν εἰς ἣν ὁ ἀδελφὸς ἔπεμψε αὐτόν.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is each that case in this sentence?

- ὁ δούλος

- τὴν οἰκίαν

- ὁ ἀδελφὸς

b. What tense are these verbs? What kind of action does each indicate?

- ἔχαιρε

- ἔπεμψε

c. What kind of word is ἣν?

- What case is it? Why?

- What gender is it? Why?

d. βλέψας is an adverbial temporal participle. What verb does it modify? Explain.

- What tense is it? Therefore, which of the two kinds of temporal participle is it?

2.

ἀσθένησας ὁ πατήρ ἔλαβε τὰ τέκνα εἰς τὴν πόλιν

τὴν βασιλεύοντα τῷ κακῷ κυρίῳ.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is each noun that case in this sentence?

- ὁ πατήρ

- τὰ τέκνα

- τὴν πόλιν

- κυρίῳ

b. What tense is ἔλαβε? What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

c. ἀσθένησας is an adverbial concessive participle modifying ἔλαβε. Explain.

- What tense is ἀσθένησας? What kind of action does this tense indicate? Explain.

d. What kind of participle is τὴν βασιλεύοντα?

- What case and gender is it? Why?

- What tense is it? What kind of action is indicated by this tense? Explain.

C. Translation of a Bible Passage

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each underlined verb or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction), or "prep" (preposition), or "rel pro" (relative pronoun) above a word if it is one of these three kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. Acts 5:5

ἀκούων	Ἀνανίας	τοὺς λόγους	τούτους	πεσὼν		ἐξέψυξεν,
	Ananias		these			died

καὶ	ἐγένετο	φόβος	μέγας	ἐπὶ	πάντας	τοὺς ἀκούοντας.
and	there was				all	

a. Why is each of these nouns the case you wrote above it?

- τοὺς λόγους

- φόβος

b. ἀκούων is an adverbial temporal participle modifying ἐξέψυξεν. Explain.

- What tense is ἀκούων? What kind of temporal participle does this indicate it is?

c. πεσὼν is an adverbial temporal participle modifying ἐξέψυξεν. Explain.

- What tense is πεσὼν? What kind of temporal participle does this indicate it is?

d. What kind of participle is τοὺς ἀκούοντας?

- What tense is it? What kind of action is indicated by this tense? Explain.

- It is used as an adjective. What does it tells us about πάντας?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words in part C of this lesson.

Lesson Twenty-Eight

Unit F. Participles

Lesson 26 Adjectival Participles
Lesson 27 Adverbial (Circumstantial) Participles
Lesson 28 Complementary Participles

A. The Form of Complementary Participles

1. The form of complementary participles is the same as the form of adjectival and adverbial participles (except that complementary participles do not have an article like some adjectival participles do).
2. The only way you can differentiate complementary participles from adjectival and adverbial participles is by testing with a translation (cf. Part B which follows).

B. The Use of Complementary Participles

1. A complementary participle is part of the action of a verb in a sentence (even though it has a noun/adjective ending instead of a verb ending). The thought that some verbs express is incomplete without a participle.
2. The participle completes the thought of the verb. That is why it is called a complementary participle.
3. Some Greek grammars call this kind of participle a supplementary participle because it supplements the action of a verb. The meaning is exactly the same.
4. There are two kinds of verbs that a complementary participle completes:
   a. A complementary participle can be used to complete the thought of a verb which expresses an incomplete thought (e.g. begin, continue, stop, try, be able). Note in the example which follows that the thought of the verb ("stop") is completed by the two complementary participles:

      Acts 5:42

οὐκ ἐπαύοντο	διδάσκοντες	καὶ	εὐαγγελιζόμενοι	τὸν Χριστὸν	Ἰησοῦν.
They did not stop	teaching	and	telling the good news of	the Christ	Jesus.

      N.B. This use of the complementary participle is exactly the same as the use of the complementary infinitive (cf. Lesson 11).

   b. A complementary participle can be used to complete the thought of a verb of perception (e.g. say, hear, think, imagine, find, perceive). In this use the complementary participle supplies the content of what a person said, heard, thought, imagined, found, perceived, etc.

      Acts 9:12

(ἐν ὁράματι)	εἶδεν		ἄνδρα	ὀνόματι	Ἀνανίαν	εἰσελθόντα.
(In a vision)	he saw	that	a man	named	Ananias	came in.

Acts 10:27

εἰσῆλθεν	καὶ	εὑρίσκει		πολλούς	συνεληλυθότας
He came in	and	he finds	that	many people	had come together.

N.B. Translating the participle with a clause beginning with the word "that" in English helps make it clear that this participle is supplying the content of the verb of perception.

C. Vocabulary

give birth to	γεννάω	γεννήσω	----	ἐγέννησα	γεγέννηκα
follow, accompany	ἀκολουθέω	ἀκολουθήσω	ἠκολούθουν	ἠκολούθησα	ἠκολούθηκα
it is necessary	δεῖ				

πῶς	How…(beginning word of a question)	ἐνώπιον	in front of (preposition with the genitive case)
ὁ ὁδός, -οῦ	road, way	ἡ θάλασσα, -ης	sea, lake
ἑπτά	seven		

Exercises – Lesson 28

A. Practice with Participles

- Give the tense, number, and case of each participle.

μαθητεύσαντι			
βαπτίσασα			
κελεύουσι			
ὑπαγούσαις			
πεπτωκότα			
πέμποντα			
τηρήσαν			
σῳζούσας			
πείσαντος			
δεδουλευκώς			
καλέσαντες			

B. Translation and Syntax

- Translate the sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.

οἱ ἀνθρώποι οἱ ἄρχοντες ἐθέλησαν κλείσαντες τὴν πόλιν πληρώσασαν.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is each that case in this sentence?

- οἱ ἀνθρώποι

- τὴν πόλιν

b. We know that οἱ ἄρχοντες is an adjectival participle. Why?

- What tense is it? What kind of action is indicated by this tense? Explain.

- What case is it? Why?

- It is an adjective. What does it tell us about the noun it modifies? Explain.

c. κλείσαντες is a complementary participle. Explain how it completes the verb.

- What tense is it? What kind of action is indicated by this tense? Explain.

- What case is it? Why?

d. πληρώσασαν is a causal adverbial participle. Explain how it modifies ἐθέλησαν κλείσαντες.

- What tense is it? What kind of action is indicated by this tense? Explain.

e. οἱ ἀνθρώποι and τὴν πόλιν both have an article which tells us they are specific. What in the context makes each specific? Explain.

- οἱ ἀνθρώποι (cf. b above)

- τὴν πόλιν (cf. d above)

C. Translation of Bible passages

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each underlined verb or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction), or "prep" (preposition), or "rel pro" (relative pronoun) above a word if it is one of these three kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. Acts 4:18

καλέσαντες αὐτοὺς ἐκέλευσαν μὴ διδάσκειν ἐπὶ τῷ ὀνόματι τοῦ Ἰησοῦ.
them not

a. What kind of temporal adverbial participle is καλέσαντες? How do you know it is this kind of temporal adverbial participle rather than the other kind?

- What verb does it modify?

- How does it modify this verb as a temporal adverbial participle? Explain.

b. What kind of infinitive is διδάσκειν? Explain.

c. What case is each of these nouns? Why is each this case in this sentence?
- τῷ ὀνόματι

- τοῦ Ἰησοῦ.

2. Acts 2:6

ὁ ὄχλος συνεχύθη ὅτι ἤκουον αὐτῶν λαλούντων
was surprised they

τῇ ἰδίᾳ διαλέκτῳ.
in their dialect.

a. What kind of clause is introduced by the word ὅτι?

- Explain how it modifies the verb συνεχύθη.

b. What tense is the verb ἤκουον?

- What kind of action does this tense indicate? Explain.

c. The participle λαλούντων is used with a verb of perception (ἤκουον). What kind of participle is it, then?

- Explain how it completes the verb.

d. What kind of dative is τῇ ἰδίᾳ διαλέκτῳ? Explain.

e. διαλέκτῳ has an article. What word makes it specific? Explain.

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words in part C of this lesson.

Lesson Twenty-Nine

Unit G. Pronouns

Lesson 29 Personal, Intensive, Relative, Demonstrative Pronouns
Lesson 30 Interrogative, Indefinite, Reflexive, Reciprocal Pronouns

A. Pronouns

1. A pronoun is a word that takes the place (pro-) of a noun (-noun).
2. For example, a statement talking about a king that uses the word king every time this person is referred to would look like this:
   After the king woke up, the king got dressed. Then the king ate the king's breakfast before the king took a ride on the king's favorite horse.
   Using pronouns would change the statement to look like this (pronouns underlined):
   After the king woke up, he got dressed. Then he ate his breakfast before he took a ride on his favorite horse.
3. Pronouns are used constantly in Greek to take the place of nouns just as they were in the example given in #2 above.
4. As the titles to the two chapters in this unit indicate, we will be looking at eight different types of pronouns. Each is used with a little different meaning.

B. Personal Pronouns

1. The first, second, and third person personal pronouns have forms in all four cases in the singular and plural.
2. The forms are these:

First Person		Second Person	
ἐγώ	I	συ	you
μου (ἐμοῦ)	me	σου (σού)	you
μοι (ἐμοῖ)	me	σοι (σοί)	you
με (ἐμέ)	me	σε (σέ)	you
ἡμεῖς	we	ὑμεῖς	you
ἡμῶν	us	ὑμῶν	you
ἡμῖν	us	ὑμῖν	you
ἡμᾶς	us	ὑμᾶς	you

Third Person

Masculine		Feminine		Neuter	
αὐτός	he	αὐτή	she	αὐτό	it
αὐτοῦ	him	αὐτῆς	her	αὐτοῦ	it
αὐτῷ	him	αὐτῇ	her	αὐτῷ	it
αὐτόν	him	αὐτήν	her	αὐτό	it
αὐτοί	they	αὐταί	they	αὐτά	they
αὐτῶν	them	αὐτῶν	them	αὐτῶν	them
αὐτοῖς	them	αὐταῖς	them	αὐτοῖς	them
αὐτούς	them	αὐτάς	them	αὐτά	them

3. A couple Bible passages with examples of the use of personal pronouns:

John 15:16

ὑμεῖς	οὐχ	ἐξελέξασθε	με,	ἀλλ'	ἐγὼ	ἐξελεξάμην	ὑμᾶς.
You	did not	chose	me,	but	I	chose	you.

Luke 11:48

αὐτοὶ	ἀπέκτειναν	αὐτούς,	δὲ	ὑμεῖς	οἰκοδομεῖτε.
They	killed	them	but	you	are building.

4. When the genitive (singular and plural) of a personal pronoun is not used as a noun but instead is used together with a noun, it becomes a possessive adjective.

οἶκος μου	my house	οἶκος ἡμῶν	our house
οἶκος σου	your house	οἶκος ὑμῶν	your house
οἶκος αὐτοῦ	his house	οἶκος αὐτῶν	their house
οἶκος αὐτῆς	her house		Masculine, feminine and
οἶκος αὐτοῦ	its house		Neuter plural are identical.

C. Intensive Pronouns

1. When the third person personal pronoun (αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτο) is not used in place of a noun but instead is used together with a noun, it intensifies that noun by putting special emphasis on that noun ("himself, themselves").

Mark 12:36

Δαυίδ	αὐτὸς	εἶπεν	ἐν	τῷ πνεύματι τῷ ἁγίῳ...
David	himself	said	in	the Holy Spirit

1 Thessalonians 4:16

αὐτὸς	ὁ κύριος	ἐν	κελεύσματι...	καταβήσεται	ἀπ'	οὐρανοῦ.
Himself	the Lord	in	a shout…	will come down	from	heaven.

2. This third person personal pronoun can also be used with the first and second persons to intensify that first or second person ("myself, yourself, yourselves").

Acts 2:22

καθὼς	οἴδατε	αὐτοὶ.
As	you know	yourselves. (or, "As you yourselves know.")

D. Relative Pronouns

1. In Lesson 23 you learned the form of relative pronouns and their use.
2. Relative pronouns are used at the beginning of relative clauses. Relative clauses are most often used as an adjective to modify a noun (Lesson 23, B,2). That is why we studied relative clauses in Lesson 23 in the unit on noun modifiers.
3. Remember that relative clauses can also be used in place of a noun as the subject of a sentence and the object of a verb or a preposition (Lesson 23,B,1).
4. Remember also that the gender and number of a relative pronoun will be the same as the noun it modifies (Lesson 23,B,3) but the case will be determined by its use in the relative clause (Lesson 23,B,4).

E. Demonstrative Pronouns

1. A demonstrative pronoun emphasizes a person or thing by pointing to that person or thing.
2. There are two demonstrative pronouns that are used often in the New Testament:
οὗτος which means "this, these," and ἐκεῖνος which means "that, those."
3. Each demonstrative pronoun has all the genders and cases of the singular and plural. The forms of ἐκεῖνος are the same as those of any of the first form of nouns/adjectives.

ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο
ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου
ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ
ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο
ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις
ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα

4. The forms of οὗτος are these:

οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο
τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο
τοῦτοι	ταῦται	ταῦτα
τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα

5. Some Bible passages with an example of the use of a demonstrative pronoun:

Acts 4:11

οὗτός	ἐστιν	ὁ λίθος	ὁ ἐξουθενηθεὶς	ὑθ'	ὑμῶν	τῶν οἰκοδόμων.
This	is	the stone	which was rejected	by	you	the builders.

Philemon 18

εἰ	ὀθείλει	τι,	τοῦτο	ἐλλόγα	ἐμοι.
If	he owes	anything	this	charge	to me.

Romans 6:21

τὸ τέλος	ἐκείνων	[ἐστιν]	θάνατος.
The end	of those things	is	death.

6. When either of the demonstrative pronouns is not used as a noun but is used instead together with a noun, it becomes a demonstrative adjective. This adds to the meaning of the noun by pointing to it with special emphasis.

Hebrews 8:10

αὕτη	ἡ διαθήκη,	ἣν	διαθήσομαι	Ἰσραὴλ	μετὰ	ἐκείνας	τὰς ἡμέρας…
This	covenant,	which	I will make with	Israel	after	those	days…

F. Vocabulary

go up	ἀναβαίνω	-------	ἀνέβαινον	ἀνέβην	ἀναβέβηκα
go down	καταβαίνω	-------	κατέβαινον	κατέβην	καταβέβηκα

ἐγώ	I	ἡμεῖς	We
σύ	You (singular)	ὑμεῖς	You(plural)
αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό	He, she, it	αὐτοί, αὐταί, αὐτά	They
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο	This	ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο	That

Exercises - Lesson 29

A. Practice with pronouns

Pronoun	Type of pronoun	Case	Gender	Number	Translation
σοί	personal	dative	-------	sg	You
αὐτά					
ἀνὴρ αὐτός					
ἐκείνῳ					
ὧν					
τούτοις					
μήτηρ σου					

με					
ἀνὴρ οὗτος					
αὐτό					
τούτων					
ἡμῖν					
ἥ					
ἐκείνῃ					
καρδία αὐτῶν					
τούτου					
αὐτῆς					

B. Translation and syntax

- Translate the sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.

ὁ αἰώνιος κύριος αὐτὸς λήψει ἡμὰς εἰς μακάριον οὖρανον ἐν ἐκείνῃ ἡμέρᾳ.

a. What tense is λήψει? What kind of action is indicated by this tense? Explain.

b. What kind of pronoun is αὐτὸς? Explain its meaning in this sentence.

c. What kind of pronoun is ἡμὰς? Explain its meaning in this sentence.

- What case is it? Why?

d. What kind of adjective is ἐκείνῃ? Explain its meaning in this sentence.

- What gender, case and number is it? Why?

2.

᾽Ιησοῦς διδάσκει τὴν ἀλήθειαν τὴν σῴζουσαν.

αὕτη φέρει χάραν ταῖς καρδίαις ὑμῶν.

a. These nouns have an article making them specific. What word or words in the context indicate what is specific about each? Explain.
- τὴν ἀλήθειαν

- ταῖς καρδίαις

b. What kind of participle is τὴν σῴζουσαν? Explain.

- What does it modify? What does it tell us about the noun it modifies?

- What tense is it? What kind of action does this tense indicate? Explain.

c. What kind of pronoun is αὕτη? Explain.

- What noun does it refer to? How do you know that it refers to this noun?

d. What tense is φέρει? What kind of action is indicated by this tense? Explain.

e. The noun χάραν has no article. The context makes it clear, however, that a specific kind of joy is meant, namely, spiritual joy. What, then, does the lack of an article indicate? Explain.

- What case is χάραν? Why?

f. What case is ταῖς καρδίαις? Why is it this case?

g. What kind of pronoun is ὑμῶν?

- What person and number is it?

- What case is it? Why?

C. Translation of a Bible passage

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each underlined verb or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction), or "prep" (preposition), or "rel pro" (relative pronoun) above a word if it is one of these three kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. John 9:2

τίς	ἥμαρτεν,	οὗτος	ἢ	οἱ γονεῖς	αὐτοῦ;
Who			or	the parents	

a. What tense is ἥμαρτεν? What kind of action is indicated by this tense? Explain.

b. What kind of pronoun is οὗτος?

- To whom does this pronoun refer (look at the previous verse in your Bible)?

- What gender and number is it?

- What case is it? Why?

c. What kind of pronoun is αὐτοῦ?

- What gender and number is it?

- To what word in the sentence does it refer? How do you know that it refers to this word?

- What case is it? Why?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words in part F of this lesson.
3. Memorize the forms of the personal pronouns (B,2 of this lesson).
4. Memorize the forms of the demonstrative pronouns (E,3 and E,4 of this lesson).

Lesson Thirty

Unit G. Pronouns

Lesson 29 Personal, Intensive, Relative, Demonstrative Pronouns
Lesson 30 Interrogative, Indefinite, Reflexive, Reciprocal Pronouns

A. Pronouns

1. Remember that pronouns are words that take the place of a noun (Lesson 29,A,1).
2. Read through Lesson 29,A,2 again to see an example of how pronouns are used.
3. In this lesson, we will be learning four more uses that pronouns have.

B. Interrogative Pronouns

1. The word "interrogative" means "asking a question."
2. An interrogative pronoun, then, is a pronoun that is used to ask a question.
3. An example in English would be: "Who went into the city?" The word "who" is the subject of the verb "went." It is asking for someone to supply the noun that is the person who went into the city.
4. The forms of the interrogative pronoun used most often (over 500 times) in the New Testament are these:

	Masculine/Feminine	Neuter
Nom. sg.	τίς (Who)	τί (What)
Gen. sg.	τίνος	τίνος
Dat. sg.	τίνι	τίνι
Acc. sg.	τίνα	τί
Nom. pl.	τίνες	τίνα
Gen. pl.	τίνων	τίνων
Dat. pl.	τίσι	τίσι
Acc. pl.	τίνας	τίνα

5. The gender and number of the interrogative pronoun will correspond to the person or thing the question is referring to.
   Revelation 7:13

τίνες	εἰσὶν	καὶ	πόθεν	ἦλθον;
Who	are they	and	from where	did they come? (asking about the people in heaven)

6. The case of the interrogative pronoun will be determined by its use in the sentence (subject or object of the verb, object of a preposition, etc.).
   Matthew 16:13

Τίνα	οἱ ἄνθρωποι	λέγουσιν	τὸν υἱὸν	τοῦ ἀνθρώπου	εἶναι;
Who [do]	the people	say that	the Son	of Man	is?

   N.B. Τίνα is the object of the verb λέγουσιν.
7. The neuter singular form τί is used often to ask a question beginning with the word "Why?" In this use, it asks for the reason why an action happens.
   Matthew 6:28

τί	μεριμνᾶτε;
Why	are you worrying?

8. Two other interrogative pronouns that are used about 30 times each in the New Testament are: ποῖος, -α, -ον ("What kind of…?"), and πόσος, -α, -ον ("How large…?" or "How much…?" or "How many…?"). The forms of these two interrogative pronouns are the same as the first form of nouns/adjectives.

C. Indefinite Pronoun

1. The word "indefinite" means "not definite."
2. An indefinite pronoun, then, is a pronoun that has no definite noun in mind when it is used to take the place of a noun.
3. An example in English would be: "Is there anyone who will go to town with me?" The pronoun "who" takes the place of a noun to do the action of the verb (will go to town). It has no definite noun in mind, however. It could be anyone hearing this question who could do the action of the verb.
4. The forms of the indefinite pronoun may seem confusing because at first glance they look exactly like the interrogative pronoun τίς, τί.
5. However, if you look more closely, you will notice something that is different. The accent is different. The nominative singular forms do not have an accent. The forms that are two syllables have the accent on the second syllable (rather than on the first syllable like the interrogative pronoun).

	Masculine/Feminine	Neuter
Nom. sg.	τις (someone, anyone)	τι (something, anything)
Gen. sg.	τινός	τινός
Dat. sg.	τινί	τινί
Acc. sg.	τινά	τι
Nom. pl.	τινές	τινά
Gen. pl.	τινῶν	τινῶν
Dat. pl.	τισί	τισί
Acc. pl.	τινάς	τινά

6. Like any noun, the case of the indefinite pronoun is determined by its use in the sentence (subject or object of a verb, object of a preposition, etc.)
   Hebrews 3:4
   πᾶς οἶκος κατασκευάζεται ὑπό **τινος**.
   Every house is built by someone.

7. The forms of the indefinite pronoun are sometimes also used as an indefinite adjective. The indefinite adjective tells us that the writer doesn't have any definite person or thing in mind.
   Luke 10:31
   ἱερεύς **τις** κατέβαινεν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἐκείνῃ.
   A priest some came down on the road that one. (Some priest came down on that road)

   N.B. Adding the word "some" to describe the priest indicates it is not important who he was.

D. Reflexive Pronoun

1. The word "reflexive" means "reflecting or referring back" to the same person or thing that was spoken about earlier.
2. So a reflexive pronoun is a pronoun that is usually used after the verb (e. g. as the object of the verb or of a preposition) to refer back to the subject of the sentence.
   2 Corinthians 3:1
   Ἀρχόμεθα πάλιν συνιστάνειν **ἑαυτοὺς**;
   Are we beginning again to recommend ourselves?

3. Since a reflexive pronoun is not used as the subject of a verb, there are no nominative forms for the reflexive pronoun.
4. The reflexive pronoun has 1st person ("myself, ourselves"), 2nd person ("yourself, yourselves"), 3rd person ("himself, herself, itself") forms.
5. Note that the forms of the 1st and 2nd person plural masculine and feminine are the same as the 3rd person plural masculine and feminine forms.
6. The endings are the same as those for the first form of nouns/adjectives.

	1st person		2nd person		3rd person		
	Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Gen. sg.	ἐμαυτοῦ		σεαυτοῦ		ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ
Dat. sg.	ἐμαυτῷ		σεαυτῷ		ἑαυτῷ	ἑαυτῇ	ἑαυτῷ
Acc. sg.	ἐμαυτόν		σεαυτόν		ἑαυτόν	ἑαυτήν	ἑαυτό
Gen. pl.	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν
Dat. pl.	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταῖς	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταῖς	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταῖς	ἑαυτοῖς
Acc. pl.	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	ἑαυτά

7. A couple examples of the use of the reflexive pronoun in the New Testament:

Philippians 2:7

ἐκένωσεν	ἑαυτὸν	λαβών	μορθὴν	δούλου.
He emptied	himself	by taking	the form	of a servant.

Matthew 25:9

πορεύεσθε	πρὸς	τοὺς πωλοῦντας	καὶ	ἀγοράσατε	ἑαυταῖς.
Go	to	those who sell [oil]	and	buy	for yourselves (fem).

E. Reciprocal Pronouns

1. The word "reciprocal" means something that goes "back and forth between" two people or two groups.
2. A reciprocal pronoun indicates that something is happening between two people or two groups of people.

John 13:34

ἐντολὴν	καινὴν	δίδωμι	ὑμῖν,	ἵνα	αγαπᾶτε	ἀλληλους.
A commandment	a new one	I give	to you,	that	you love	one another.

3. Since the reciprocal pronoun always involves two or more people, there are only plural forms of this pronoun. The same forms are used for masculine, feminine, and neuter.
4. The endings are the same as those of the first form of nouns/adjectives:

Gen. pl.	ἀλλήλων
Dat. pl.	ἀλλήλοις
Acc. pl.	ἀλλήλους

F. Vocabulary

- The four pronouns in this lesson.

Exercises - Lesson 30

A. Practice with Pronouns

- Fill in the blanks to identify these pronouns.
- Some may not have a gender; others may not have a person.

	Type of pronoun	Person	Number	Gender	Case	Translation
σου	personal	2nd	sg	-------	gen	you
ἄγγελος αὐτός						
τινές						
ἑαυτήν						
ἀλλήλους						
τίσι						
ἐκεῖνο						
οἵς						
τούτῳ						
ἐμαυτόν						
πλοῖον μου						
τινός						
τίνος						
ὑμῶν						
ταύταις						
αὐτοῦ						
ἐκείνους						
σεαυτῷ						
τί						
τινάς						
ἐμοί						
υἱοί αὐτοί						
αὐτοι						
ζωή αὐτῆς						
τινά						
τίνα						
ἑαυτόν						
ἀλλήλων						
αὐτή						
αὕτη						
ᾗ						
ἑαυτῇ						
τίνων						
τινί						
ἄρτος ἡμῶν						

B. Translation and Syntax

- Translate the sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.

θεὸς αὐτὸς κατέβη σῴζειν ὑμάς ἀπὸ τῶν ἁμαρτίων ὑμῶν.

a. What kind of pronoun is αὐτὸς? Explain.

b. What tense is κατέβη? What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

c. What kind of infinitive is σῴζειν? Explain.

d. What kind of pronoun is ὑμάς?

- What case is it? Why is it this case?

e. What case is τῶν ἁμαρτίων? Why is it this case?

- Explain what the article with ἁμαρτίων indicates.

f. What kind of word is ὑμῶν? Explain.

2.

τίνι ἐξουσίᾳ διδάσκεις τά τέκνα ταύτα ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ θεοῦ;

a. What kind of pronoun is τίνι? Explain.

b. What kind of dative is ἐξουσίᾳ? Explain.

c. What case, number, and gender is τίνι? Why is it this case, number, and gender?

d. What tense is διδάσκεις? What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

e. What case is τά τέκνα? Why is it this case?

f. What kind of word is ταύτα? Explain.

g. What case is τῷ οἴκῳ? Why is it this case?

h. What kind of genitive is θεοῦ? Explain.

C. Translation of Bible passages

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each underlined verb or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction) or "prep" (preposition) above a word if it is one of these kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. John 9:2

τίς	ἥμαρτε,	οὗτος	ἢ or	οἱ γονεῖς	αὐτοῦ;

a. What kind of pronoun is τίς? Explain.

b. What kind of action does the tense of ἥμαρτε indicate?

c. What kind of pronoun is οὗτος? Explain.

d. What kind of word is αὐτοῦ? Explain.

2. Matthew 16:24

Εἴ τις If		θέλει	ἐλθεῖν to come	ὀπίσω after	μου,	ἀπαρνησάσθω let him deny	ἑαυτὸν...

καὶ	ἀκολουθείτω	μοι.
and	follow	

a. What kind of pronoun is τις? Explain.

- What case is it? Why is it this case?

b. What kind of pronoun is μου?

- What case is it? Why is it this case?

c. What kind of pronoun is ἑαυτὸν?

- What case is it? Why is it this case?

d. What kind of pronoun is μοι?

- What case is it?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the four types of pronouns in this lesson.

Lesson Thirty-One

Unit H. Verbs: Voice, Mood, Irregular

Lesson 31 Middle and Passive Voice
Lesson 32 Imperative Mood
Lesson 33 Subjunctive and Optative Moods
Lesson 34 Linking Verbs (εἰμί, γίνομαι)
Lesson 35 Compound and Contract Verbs
Lesson 36 -μι Verbs

A. Explanation of Voice

1. By the "voice" of the verb we mean how the subject relates to the verb in a sentence or clause. Or, to put it another way: Is the subject doing the action of the verb, or is the subject receiving the action of the verb?
2. We refer to the voice as "active voice" if the subject is doing the action of the verb.
3. We refer to the voice as "passive voice" if the subject is receiving the action of the verb.
4. So far, you have learned the forms of the active voice of the Greek verb (Lessons 4-8, 12, and 26).
5. In learning the Greek verb, there is a third voice we need to talk about, the middle voice. We will begin by looking at this special voice in the Greek language.

B. The Function of the Middle Voice.

1. Prior to the New Testament time, the middle voice in Greek had a special meaning.
2. That special meaning of the middle voice of the Greek verb was this: When the subject of the verb did the action of the verb, that action had an effect on him/her (e.g. the action that the subject did was for his/her benefit).
3. We won't explain any further what we mean by that last statement because by the time the New Testament was written, this special meaning of middle verbs no longer applied.
4. In the New Testament, the verbs in the middle voice have basically the same meaning as verbs in the active voice.
5. Verbs in the middle voice have different forms (endings) than verbs in the active voice, so we have to learn those forms in order to read the Greek language.
6. When it comes to interpreting the meaning of verbs in the middle voice, however, they have exactly the same meaning as verbs in the active voice, that is, the subject is doing the action of the verb.

C. The Forms of the Middle Voice in the Present, Future, and Perfect Tenses

1. The endings of three of the tenses in the middle voice – present, future, and perfect – are the same. Listed below are the endings and then the forms that use these endings in these three tenses.
2. Note that the 2nd person singular in both the present and future tenses are not the regular form. Instead, they are contractions of the regular form.

	Endings	Present	Future	Perfect
1st sg	-μαι	θύομαι	θύσομαι	τέθυμαι
2nd sg	-σαι	θύῃ	θύσῃ	τέθυσαι
3rd sg	-ται	θύεται	θύσεται	τέθυται
1st pl	-μεθα	θυόμεθα	θυσόμεθα	τεθύμεθα
2nd pl	-σθε	θύεσθε	θύσεσθε	τέθυσθε
3rd pl	-νται	θύονται	θύσονται	τέθυνται

- Cf. F and G below for a translation of these forms.

3. How does one tell the difference between these three tenses of the middle voice if the endings are all the same? Note these things:
   a. In the present tense the endings are added to the stem -θυ (verb = θύω). You may remember that this was also the way the present tense was formed in the active voice = stem + endings (cf. Lesson 4,B,2).
   b. In the future tense the endings are added to the stem -θυ and the letter sigma. You may remember that this was also the way the future tense was formed in the active voice = stem + sigma + endings (cf. Lesson 6,A,4).
   c. In the perfect tense the endings are added to the reduplication of the stem (τε-) and the stem (-θυ). You may remember that reduplication was also an important way to identify the perfect tense in the active voice (Lesson 8,A,4a).
   d. So the endings will tell you whether a verb is active or middle voice, and the things listed in a, b, and c above will tell you what tense the verb is.

D. The Forms of the Middle Voice in the Imperfect and Aorist Tenses

1. The other two tenses in the middle voice – imperfect and aorist – have another kind of endings. Listed below are the endings and then the forms that use these endings in these two tenses.
2. Note that the 2nd person singular in both the imperfect and aorist tenses is not the regular form. Instead, they are contractions of the regular form.

	Endings	Imperfect	Aorist
1st sg	-μην	ἐθυόμην	ἐθυσάμην
2nd sg	-σο	ἐθύου	ἐθύσω
3rd sg	-το	ἐθύετο	ἐθύσατο
1st pl	-μεθα	ἐθύμεθα	ἐθυσάμεθα
2nd pl	-σθε	ἐθύεσθε	ἐθύσασθε
3rd pl	-ντο	ἐθύοντο	ἐθύσαντο

- Cf. F and G below for a translation of these forms.
- Note that the 1st pl and 2nd pl endings are the same as the endings used by the other 3 tenses.

3. In the imperfect tense the endings are added to the augment (ἐ-) and the stem (-θυ). You may remember that the augment + the stem was also the way to identify the imperfect tense in the active voice (Lesson 5,A,3).
4. In the aorist tense the endings are added to the augment (ἐ-) the stem (-θυ), and the letters sigma and alpha (σα). You may remember that the augment + the stem + σα was also the way to identify the aorist tense in the active voice (Lesson 7,A,5,6).
5. So the endings will tell you whether a verb is active or middle voice, and the items listed in a and b above will tell you what tense the verb is.

E. The Function of the Passive Voice

1. As was said in A,3 above, we refer to the voice as "passive voice" if the subject is receiving the action of the verb.
2. Here is an example of a passive voice in English:
   "Sinners are saved from hell by Jesus' death on the cross."
3. Note that it is Jesus' death that is doing the action of the verb. Jesus' death saves sinners from hell.
4. Note who is receiving the action of the verb. Sinners are the ones who are saved from hell.
5. The exact same thing can be said with either the active or passive voice:
   Active voice = Jesus' death on the cross saves sinners from hell.
   Passive voice = Sinners are saved from hell by Jesus' death on the cross.
6. Why would a biblical writer say something in the passive voice rather than the active voice? Usually the passive voice places special emphasis on how the action of the verb is done. To say it another way, it emphasizes the person or the thing that did the action of the verb.
7. If a biblical writer uses the passive voice, it would be good to ask the question, "Why, in this context, is the writer emphasizing the person or the thing that did the action?"

F. The Forms of the Passive Voice in the Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Tenses

1. The forms of the passive voice are the same as the forms for the middle voice in three tenses – present, imperfect, and perfect.
2. There is only one way we can tell whether a verb in these three tenses is middle or passive. We have to decide from the context whether the subject is the doer of the action of the verb (middle voice) or the receiver of the action of the verb (passive voice).
3. The forms are repeated from part D above, this time with a translation for each voice.

Present	Middle Voice	Passive Voice	
θύομαι	I am sacrificing	I am being sacrificed	(N.B. Present Tense is ongoing action in present time.)
θύῃ	You are sacrificing	You are being sacrificed	
θύεται	He/she/it is sacrificing	He/she/it is being sacrificed	
θυόμεθα	We are sacrificing	We are being sacrificed	
θύεσθε	You are sacrificing	You are being sacrificed	
θύονται	They are sacrificing	They are being sacrificed	

Imperfect	Middle Voice	Passive Voice	
ἐθυόμην	I was sacrificing	I was being sacrificed	(N.B. Imperfect Tense is ongoing action in past time.)
ἐθύου	You were sacrificing	You were being sacrificed	
ἐθύετο	He/she/it was sacrificing	He/she/it was being sacrificed	
ἐθύομεθα	We were sacrificing	We were being sacrificed	
ἐθύεσθε	You were sacrificing	You were being sacrificed	
ἐθύοντο	They were sacrificing	They were being sacrificed	

Perfect	Middle Voice	Passive Voice	
τέθυμαι	I have sacrificed	I have been sacrificed	(N.B. Perfect Tense is completed action with an ongoing result.)
τέθυσαι	You have sacrificed	You have been sacrificed	
τέθυται	He/she/it has sacrificed	He/she/it has been sacrificed	
τεθύμεθα	We have sacrificed	We have been sacrificed	
τέθυσθε	You have sacrificed	You have been sacrificed	
τέθυνται	They have sacrificed	They have been sacrificed	

G. The Forms of the Passive Voice in the Future and Aorist Tenses

1. The forms of two tenses – future and aorist – are different from the middle voice.
2. Both are fairly easy to identify because they have -θη after the stem.
3. The future passive is formed by the stem + θη + σ + the same endings used in the middle voice.

Future	Passive
θυθήσομαι	I will be sacrificed
θυθήσῃ	You will be sacrificed
θυθήσεται	He/she/it will be sacrificed
θυθησόμεθα	We will be sacrificed
θυθήσεσθε	You will be sacrificed
θυθήσονται	They will be sacrificed

4. The aorist passive is formed by the augment + the stem + θη + some endings that are different from the endings used in the middle voice.

Aorist Passive Endings	Forms	
-ν	ἐθύθην	I was sacrificed
-ς	ἐθύθης	You were sacrificed
---	ἐθύθη	He/she/it was sacrificed
-μεν	ἐθύθημεν	We were sacrificed
-τε	ἐθύθητε	You were sacrificed
-σαν	ἐθύθησαν	They were sacrificed

H. Middle and Passive Voice Infinitives and Participles

1. Middle voice infinitives have the ending -σθαι.
   a. Present tense: stem + σθαι = θύεσθαι (also the passive voice infinitive)
   b. Future tense: stem + σ + σθαι = θύσεσθαι
   c. Aorist tense: stem + σα + σθαι = θύσασθαι
   d. Perfect tense: reduplication + stem + σθαι = τεθύσθαι (also the passive voice infinitive)
2. Passive voice infinitives have a different form only in the future and aorist tenses.
   a. Future tense: stem + θη + σ + σθαι = θυθήσεσθαι (uses the -σθαι ending)
   b. Aorist tense: stem + θη + ναι = θυθῆναι (uses a different ending)
3. Middle voice participles have the endings -μενος (masc.), -μενη (fem.), -μενον (neuter).
   a. Present tense: stem + μενος (η, ον) = θύμενος (η, ον) (passive form also).
   b. Future tense: stem + σ + μενος (η, ον) = θυσόμενος (η, ον).
   c. Aorist tense: stem + σα + μενος (η, ον) = θυσάμενος (η, ον).
   d. Perfect tense: reduplication + stem + μενος (η, ον) = τεθύμενος (η, ον) (passive form also).
      N.B. There is no imperfect participle. The present tense participle is used both for ongoing action in the present time and ongoing action in past time.
4. Passive voice participles have a different form only in the future and aorist tenses.
   a. Future tense: stem + θη + σ + μενος (η, ον) = θυθησόμενος (η, ον).
   b. Aorist tense: stem + θείς (θεῖσα, θέν) = θυθείς (θυθεῖσα, θυθέν).
      N.B. The aorist passive participle has the forms of the second form of adjectives/nouns: so the genitive = θυθέντος/θυθεῖσα/θυθέντος; the dative = θυθέντι/θυθείσῃ/θυθέντι; etc.

I. Vocabulary

1. Some verbs you have learned use the middle voice in place of the active voice in the future tense. You have a blank in this tense on your vocable cards for these verbs. Now that we have learned the middle voice, add these future forms to your vocable cards:

ἀποθνήσκω	Future tense	ἀποθανοῦμαι
πάσχω	Future tense	πείσομαι
πίπτω	Future tense	πεσοῦμαι
χαίρω	Future tense	χαιρήσομαι

2. Some verbs use the middle voice in place of the active voice in all the tenses.

be, become	γίνομαι	γενήσομαι	ἐγινόμην	ἐγενόμην	γέγονα
come, go	ἔρχομαι	ἐλευσομαι	ἠρχόμην	ἦλθον	ἐλήλυθα
go out	ἐξέρξομαι	ἐξελεύσομαι	ἐξηρχόμην	ἐξῆλθον	ἐξελήλυθα
come in, go in	εἰσέρχομαι	εἰσελεύσομαι	-------	εἰσῆλθον	εἰσελήλυθα
answer	ἀποκρίνομαι	-------	-------	ἀπεκρινάμην	-------
be able	δύναμαι	δυνήσομαι	ἐδυνάμην	-------	-------

Exercises - Lesson 31

A. Practice with Middle and Passive Verb Forms

- Identify these forms as middle or passive or both (1).
- Identify the tense (2), and then do either 3 or 4 or 5 depending on what kind of form it is.
- Note the underlining in each word. This gives you a key to identifying the form.

	1.Middle/Passive	2.Tense	3.Person & Number	4. Infinitive	5.Participle (number, gender, case)
δοκιμασάμενῃ	middle	aorist			sg, feminine, dative
βέβληται	middle/passive	perfect	3rd sg		
εὐαγγελίσεσθαι	middle	future		infinitive	
δουλεύσονται					
δεδουλευται					
ἐδουλεύεσθε					
δουλευεσθαι					
δουλευσαμένῳ					
δουλευόμεθα					
ἐδουλεύθησαν					
δουλευμέναις					
δεδουλεύσθαι					
νομισάμεθα					
κελεύμαι					
ἁρπάζεσθαι					
ἐμαθητεύθης					
θελήσεσθε					
πεπιστεύνται					
ἠλπιζόμην					
ἐπιθυμησάμην					
γεγεννήσαι					
κεκελεύσθαι					
κελευθῆναι					
γράφῃ					
ἀκούσεσθε					
ἀπεκτείνετο					
βεβλησαι					
βαπτισαμένους					
βασιλευθήσομαι					
βλέπεσθαι					
ἐδιδάσκου					
δοκιμάζονται					
ἐδουλεύθητε					

	1.Middle/Passive	2.Tense	3.Person & Number	4. Infinitive	5.Participle (number, gender, case)
ἔχεται					
τεθεράπευται					
ἐκαθευδήσατο					
κλείσεσθαι					
δοκιμάθεν					
ἐλαμβανοντο					
μεμενήμεθα					
οἰκησεται					
σῳζομένου					

B. Translation and Syntax

- Translate the sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.

ὁ κύριος ἐκελεύσατο τὸν δούλον αὐτοῦ γράφεσθαι τῇ μητρί ἑαυτοῦ.

a. What cases are each of these nouns? Why is each the case that it is in this sentence?

- ὁ κύριος

- τὸν δούλον

- τῇ μητρί

b. What tense is ἐκελεύσατο? What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

- What voice is it?

c. The word γράφεσθαι is an infinitive. What kind of infinitive is it?

- The form could be middle or passive voice. Why is it middle voice in this sentence?

d. What kind of pronoun is αὐτοῦ?

- What noun does it refer to? Explain.

- What case is it? Why is it this case?

e. What kind of pronoun is ἑαυτοῦ?

- What noun does it refer to? Explain.

- What case is it? Why is it this case?

2.
λίθοι ἐβάλλοντο ἀνθρώπῳ κακῷ εἰς τὸν οἶκον τοὺ πληρωθέντα γυναιξί.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is each the case it is in this sentence?
- λίθοι

- ἀνθρώπῳ

- οἶκον

- γυναιξί

b. What tense is ἐβάλλοντο? What kind of action is indicated by this tense? Explain.

- The word ἐβάλλοντο is passive voice. Explain what that means in this sentence.

c. What kind of word is κακῷ?

- Explain why it has the ending -ῷ.

d. πληρωθέντα is an adjectival participle. How do we know this?

- What tense is it? What kind of action is indicated by this tense? Explain.

- What voice is πληρωθέντα? Explain what that means in this sentence.

e. The noun οἶκον is specific. How do we know this?

- What word(s) in the sentence tell us that it is specific? Explain.

f. These words have no article and are indefinite. Explain what that means for each.
- λίθοι

- ἀνθρώπῳ

- γυναιξί

C. Translation of Bible passages

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each underlined verb or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction) or "prep" (preposition) or "pron" (pronoun) above a word if it is one of these kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. 2 Corinthians 1:4

παρακαλούμεθα αὐτοὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ.

a. What case is τοῦ θεοῦ? Why is it this case?

b. What voice is παρακαλούμεθα?

- Who is doing the action of this verb?

c. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of παρακαλούμεθα?

- What comfort is there for us in the kind of action stated by this verb?

d. Why is αὐτοὶ plural nominative?

- What kind of pronoun is αὐτοὶ? Explain.

2. Matthew 26:40

Ἰησοῦς ἔρχεται πρὸς τοὺς μαθητὰς καὶ εὑρίσκει αὐτοὺς καθεύδοντας.
disciples and finds

a. What voice is ἔρχεται?

- Who is doing the action of the verb?

b. Why is αὐτοὺς the case that you said it is?

- What kind of pronoun is αὐτοὺς?

- To whom does αὐτοὺς refer?

c. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of καθεύδοντας?

- What does this kind of action tell us about the disciples?

- What case, number, and gender is καθεύδοντας?

- Why is it this case, number, and gender?

- What kind of participle is καθεύδοντας?

- Since it is this kind of participle, what is this participle doing in this sentence?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the vocabulary of this lesson (Part I).
3. Learn the two sets of endings for the middle voice, and the different set of endings for verbs in the aorist passive.
4. Make out a card that states how the verb is formed in each of these tenses:
   - Present middle and passive.
   - Future middle and passive.
   - Imperfect middle and passive.
   - Aorist middle and passive.
   - Perfect middle and passive.

Lesson Thirty-Two

Unit H. Verbs: Voice, Mood, Irregular

Lesson 31 Middle and Passive Voice
Lesson 32 Imperative Mood
Lesson 33 Subjunctive and Optative Moods
Lesson 34 Linking Verbs (εἰμί, γίνομαι)
Lesson 35 Compound and Contract Verbs
Lesson 36 -μι Verbs

A. The Function of the Imperative

1. The word "imperative" means "giving a command."
   e.g. The words "Go" and "turn off" in this sentence command the daughter to do two things.
   The mother said to her daughter, "Go to the kitchen and turn off the stove!"
2. So imperative forms of the verb in Greek are verbs that are a command.
   John 1:38, 39

Διδάσκαλε,	ποῦ	μένεις;	λέγει	αὐτοῖς,	Ἔρχεσθε	καὶ	ὄψεσθε.
Teacher,	where	are you staying?	He says	to them	"Come	and	see!"

B. The Forms of the Imperative

1. The imperative forms are almost all in the present and aorist tenses.
2. The present imperative usually indicates that the speaker is urging ongoing action.
   1 Thessalonians 5:17

προσεύχεσθε	ἀδιαλείπτως.
Keep on praying	without stopping.

3. The aorist imperative emphasizes that the speaker wants the action to be done.
   John 5:11

Ἆρον	(aorist impv)	τὸν κράβαττόν	σου	καὶ	περιπάτει	(pres impv).
Take up		the bed	of yours	and	keep on walking.	

4. Imperative forms are only in the 2nd and 3rd persons, singular and plural.
5. Note that the active endings in both tenses are similar in the 2nd person singular (-σθω), 2nd person plural (-σθε), and 3rd person plural (-σθωσαν).
6. Note also that the middle endings in both tenses are similar in the 2nd person singular (-τω), 2nd person plural (-τε), and 3rd person plural (-τωσαν).
7. The aorist passive imperative has the usual θη after the stem (Lesson 31,G,4).

8. The forms are all listed below in order to make it possible for you to make the comparisons noted in 6, 7, and 8 above.

Imperative Forms

Present active			
2nd person singular	θυ + ε	θύε	sacrifice, keep on sacrificing
3rd person singular	θυ + ετω	θυέτω	let him sacrifice, let him keep on sacrificing
2nd person plural	θυ + ετε	θύετε	sacrifice, keep on sacrificing
3rd person plural	θυ + ετωσαν	θυέτωσαν	let them sacrifice, let them keep on sacrificing
Present middle			
2nd person singular	θυ + ου	θύου	
3rd person singular	θυ + εσθω	θυέσθω	(same translations as the present active voice above)
2nd person plural	θυ + εσθε	θύεσθε	
3rd person plural	θυ + εσθωσαν	θυέσθωσαν	
Present passive (same forms as the present middle above)			
2nd person singular	θυ + ου	θύου	be sacrificed, keep on being sacrificed
3rd person singular	θυ + εσθω	θυέσθω	let him be sacrificed, let him keep on being sacrificed
2nd person plural	θυ + εσθε	θύεσθε	be sacrificed, keep on being sacrificed
3rd person plural	θυ + εσθωσαν	θυέσθωσαν	let them be sacrificed, let them keep on being sacrificed
Aorist active			
2nd person singular	θυ + σον	θῦσον	sacrifice [do it]
3rd person singular	θυ + σα + τω	θυσάτω	let him sacrifice [do it]
2nd person plural	θυ + σα + τε	θυσάτε	sacrifice [do it]
3rd person plural	θυ + σα + τωσαν	θυσάτωσαν	let them sacrifice [do it]
Aorist middle			
2nd person singular	θυ + σαι	θῦσαι	
3rd person singular	θυ + σα + σθω	θυσάσθω	(same translations as the aorist active voice above)
2nd person plural	θυ + σα + σθε	θυσάσθε	
3rd person plural	θυ + σα + σθωσαν	θυσάσθωσαν	
Aorist passive			
2nd person singular	θυ + θη + τι	θύθητι	be sacrificed [do it]
3rd person singular	θυ + θη + τω	θυθήτω	let him be sacrificed [do it]
2nd person plural	θυ + θη + τε	θύθητε	be sacrificed [do it]
3rd person plural	θυ + θη + τωσαν	θυθήτωσαν	let them be sacrificed [do it]

C. Vocabulary

Verbs used 50 or more times in the New Testament with only middle/passive forms

go, travel	πορεύομαι	πορεύσομαι	ἐπορευόμην	ἐπορεύθην	πεπόρευμαι
depart, go away	ἀπέρχομαι	ἀπελεύσομαι	ἀπερχόμην	ἀπῆλθον	ἀπελήλυθα
come to, go to	προσέρχομαι	προσελεύσομαι	προσερχόμην	προσῆλθον	προσελήλυθα
fear, be afraid	φοβέομαι	φοβηθήσομαι	ἐφοβούμην	ἐφοβήθην	
sit, stay	κάθημαι	καθήσομαι	ἐκαθήμην	-------	-------
pray	προσεύχομαι	προσεύξομαι	προσηυχόμην	προσηυξάμην	-------
take, receive	δέχομαι	δέξομαι	ἐδεχόμην	ἐδεξάμην	δέδεγμαι
greet	ἀσπάζομαι	-------	ἠσπαζόμην	ἠσπασάμην	-------

Exercises - Lesson 32

A. Practice with Imperatives

- Identify each imperative (tense, voice, person, number) and translate.

δοξάσατε θεόν	aorist	active	2nd	pl	"Glorify God!" [do it]
ἀκούετε αὐτοῦ					
ἀκουλούθε με					
ἁρπάζον ὄχλον					
βασιλευέτωσαν ἡμᾶς					
λόγος πιστευθήτω					
βλέπεσθε τὸν οἶκον					
γραφεσθωσαν τὸ ῥήμα					
διώξασθε τοὺς υἱούς					
δοκιμάζετω τὰ πλοῖα					
οἱ κυρίοι δουλευθήτωσαν					
ἔρχετε εἰς τὸν ἱερόν					
μεινέσθω ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ					
σῷζε τὸν ἄνδρα					
προσεύχεσθε θεῷ					

B. Translation and Syntax

- Translate the sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.

προσεύχεσθε εἰς τὴν μεγάλην πόλιν ἐν ἣ οἱ ἱερεῖς θύονται

πρό τῷ ἱερῷ

a. What verb form is προσεύχεσθε?

- What person and number is it?

- What tense is it?

b. What kind of words are εἰς, ἐν, and πρό?

c. What case is each of these words? Why is each the case that it is in this sentence?

- πόλιν

- ἱερεῖς

- ἱερῷ

d. What kind of word is μεγάλην?

- What case, gender, and number is μεγάλην?

- Why is μεγάλην this case, gender and number?

e. What kind of word is ἣ?

- What word does ἣ refer to?

- What gender and number is ἣ? Why is it this gender and number?

- What case is ἣ? Why is it this case?

f. What tense is θύονται? What kind of action is indicated by this tense? Explain.

2.

ὁ πατηρ τῆς τυφλῆς γυναίκος ἔλεξε αὐτῇ, ἀσπάζε τοὺ ἀδελφὸν σου

σημείῳ τῆς εἰρήνης.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Explain why each is the case that it is in this sentence.
- γυναίκος

- ἀδελφόν

- εἰρήνης

b. What kind of word is τυφλῆς?

- What case, gender, and number is τυφλῆς?

- Why is τυφλῆς this case, gender, and number?

c. What tense is ἔλεξε? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

d. What kind of word is αὐτῇ?

- What word does it refer to?

- What gender and number is it? Why is it this gender and number?

- What case is it? Why is it this case?

e. What kind of verb is ἀσπάζε?

- What tense and voice is it?

- What person and number is it?

f. What kind of pronoun is σου? Explain.

- To whom does σου refer?

g. The word σημείῳ does not have an article, but it is specific. Why?

- What is being stressed about σημείῳ since it is a specific noun without an article? Explain.

C. Translation of Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each underlined verb or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "prep" (preposition) or "pron" (pronoun) above a word if it is one of these kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. Mark 5:36

ὁ Ἰησοῦς παρακούσας τὸν λόγον λαλούμενον λέγει, Μὴ φοβοῦ,
Jesus Don't

μόνον πίστευε.
only

a. παρακούσας is an adverbial preliminary participle. Explain how it modifies the verb λέγει.

b. How does the tense of παρακούσας tell us it is a preliminary participle?

c. Why is τὸν λόγον the case that you indicated above?

- τὸν λόγον has an article making it specific. What word makes it specific? Explain.

d. What kind of participle is λαλούμενον? Explain what this kind of participle does.

e. What kind of verb is φοβοῦ and πίστευε?

- What tense, voice, person, and number is φοβοῦ?

- What tense, voice, person, and number is πίστευε?

2. 1 Peter 3:11

ἐκκλινάτω ἀπὸ κακοῦ καὶ ποιησάτω ἀγαθόν, ζητησάτω εἰρήνην
Let him turn and

καὶ διωξάτω αὐτήν.
and

a. What kind of verb is ποιησάτω and ζητησάτω and διωξάτω?

b. What tense, voice, person, and number are all three?

c. What kind of word is αὐτήν?

- Why is it feminine and singular?

d. Explain why κακοῦ is genitive but ἀγαθόν and εἰρήνην and αὐτήν are all accusative case.

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the vocabulary of this lesson.
3. Memorize the endings of the present and aorist imperatives (active, middle, passive).

Lesson Thirty-Three

Unit H. Verbs: Voice, Mood, Irregular

Lesson 31 Middle and Passive Voice
Lesson 32 Imperative Mood
Lesson 33 Subjunctive and Optative Moods
Lesson 34 Linking Verbs (εἰμί, γίνομαι)
Lesson 35 Compound and Contract Verbs
Lesson 36 -μι Verbs

A. Moods in the Greek Language

1. When we talk about the mood of verbs, we are referring to whether the action of the verb is real action or possible action.
2. We have learned two of the four moods in Greek: the indicative and the imperative.
   a. The indicative mood (Lessons 4,8,31) is the mood that indicates real action.
   b. The imperative mood (Lesson 32) is one of the moods that involve possible action. A command is not real action until it is done. The command is only something that the speaker wants someone to do.

B. Optative Mood

1. Another mood that involves possible action is the optative mood.
2. We don't have to spend much time on the optative mood because it is used only a few times in the New Testament. At the time of the New Testament people were using the subjunctive mood more and more in place of the optative mood.
3. The optative mood is used only in the present and aorist tenses, and almost always in the 3rd person singular.
4. Knowing these five forms, then, covers most of the few uses of the optative in the New Testament.

Present	active	3rd person singular	θύοι
Present	middle/passive	3rd person singular	θύοιτο
Aorist	active	3rd person singular	θύσαι
Aorist	middle	3rd person singular	θύσαιτο
Aorist	passive	3rd person singular	θυθείη

5. There are two main uses of the optative mood:

a. Volitive optative = expresses a wish (most often a negative wish).

e.g. Romans 6:1

ἐπιμένωμεν	τῇ ἁμαρτίᾳ;	μὴ γένοιτο.
Shall we continue	in sin?	May it never be!

N.B. Paul uses this expression, μὴ γένοιτο, 14 times in his letters.

b. Deliberative optative (usually used with the particle ἄν) = a person is deliberating about a situation (i.e. thinking about what might possibly happen).

e.g. Luke 1:62

ἐνένευον	τῷ πατρὶ	αὐτοῦ	τὸ τί	ἂν θέλοι	καλεῖσθαι	αὐτό.
They made signs	to the father	of him	what	he might want	to name	him.

C. The Use of the Subjunctive Mood

1. The subjunctive mood is used often in Greek. In fact, there are six main uses of the subjunctive mood.

a. Hortatory subjunctive = the speaker/writer urges another person or group of people to join with him in doing something (always first person singular or plural).

Revelation 17:1

δείξω	σοι	τὸ κρίμα	τῆς πόρνης	τῆς μεγάλης.
Let me show	to you	the judgment	of the prostitute	the great one.

Galatians 6:10

ἐργαζώμεθα	τὸ ἀγαθὸν	πρὸς	πάντας.
Let us keep on doing	the good thing	to	all [people].

b. Deliberative subjunctive = a person is deliberating (asking himself) what he should do.

Romans 6:1

ἐπιμένωμεν	τῇ ἁμαρτίᾳ	ἵνα	ἡ χάρις	πλεονάσῃ;
Shall we continue	in sin	in order that	grace	might increase?

c. Purpose clause that begins with ἵνα = the ἵνα clause states the goal a person has in mind in doing something (the goal that might be accomplished).

Romans 6:1

ἐπιμένωμεν	τῇ ἁμαρτίᾳ	ἵνα	ἡ χάρις	πλεονάσῃ;
Shall we continue	in sin	in order that	grace	might increase?

d. Prohibitive subjunctive = the speaker/writer tells a person not to do something.

Revelation 22:10

μὴ σφραγίσῃς	τους λόγους	τῆς προφητεία	τοῦ βιβλίου	τούτου.
Don't seal shut	the words	of the prophecy	of the book	this one.

e. Denial Subjunctive = the speaker/writer says that something most certainly will not happen (always two negatives, namely οὐ and μή, plus the aorist subjunctive).

John 11:26

πᾶς	ὁ	ζῶν	καὶ	πιστεύων	εἰς	ἐμὲ	οὐ μὴ ἀποθάνῃ.
Everyone	who	lives	and	believes	in	me	most certainly will not die.

f. Indefinite relative clause or time clause = clauses that are not referring to a known, definite person or time (often the particle ἄν or ἐάν will appear in the clause).

Matthew 5:21

ὃς ἂν φονεύσῃ	ἔσται	ἔνοχος	τῇ κρίσει.
Whoever murders	will be	subject	to the judgment.

1 Corinthians 11:26

καταγγέλλετε	τὸν θάνατον	τοῦ κυρίου	ἄχρις οὗ	ἔλθῃ.
Keep on proclaiming	the death	of the Lord	until	he comes

D. The Forms of the Subjunctive Mood

1. In the subjunctive mood, only the present and aorist tenses are used.
   a. The present tense indicates possible ongoing action.
   b. The aorist tense indicates action that possibly might happen.
2. The subjunctive forms are similar in various ways to other forms. These similarities are stated in the notes to the right of each list. Knowing these similarities may help you memorize the subjunctive forms.

Present Active	Subjunctive	(Indicative)
1st sg	θύω	(θύω)
2nd sg	~~θυῃς~~ θύῃς	(θύεις)
3rd sg	~~θυῃ~~ θύῃ	(θύει)
1st pl	θύωμεν	(θύομεν)
2nd pl	θύητε	(θύετε)
3rd pl	θύωσι	(θύουσι)

a. The 1st person sg is the same.
b. The endings are the same as the indicative.
c. The vowel before the endings is different (η instead of ε, ω instead of ο, cf. underlining).

(The forms that are crossed out show you how the forms were changed because they were hard to pronounce)

Present Middle/Passive	Subjunctive	(Indicative)
1st sg	θύωμαι	(θύομαι)
2nd sg	θύῃ	(θύῃ)
3rd sg	θύηται	(θύεται)
1st pl	θυώμεθα	(θυόμεθα)
2nd pl	θύησθε	(θύεσθε)
3rd pl	θύωνται	(θύονται)

a. The 2nd person sg is the same.
b. The endings are the same as the indicative.
c. The vowel before the endings is different (η instead of ε, ω instead of ο, cf. underlining).

Aorist Active	Subjunctive	Aorist Middle Subjunctive
1st sg	θύσω	θύσωμαι
2nd sg	θύσῃς	θύσῃ
3rd sg	θύσῃ	θύσηται
1st pl	θύσωμεν	θυσώμεθα
2nd pl	θύσητε	θύσησθε
3rd pl	θύσωσι	θύσωνται

a. There is no augment (ἐ) before the root.
b. The forms are the same as the present active and middle above with a σ added right after the root (cf. underlining).

Aorist Passive	Subjunctive
1st sg	θυθῶ
2nd sg	θυθῇς
3rd sg	θυθῇ
1st pl	θυθῶμεν
2nd pl	θυθῆτε
3rd pl	θυθῶσι

a. There is no augment (ἐ) before the root.
b. The usual θ or θη in the aorist passive is used here also.
c. The endings are the same as the present active and aorist active endings above.

E. Vocabulary

preach	κηρύσσω	κηρύξω	ἐκήρυσσον	ἐκήρυξα	-------
ask, plead	ἐρωτάω	ἐρωτήσω	ἠρώτων	ἐρώτησα	-------
call out loudly	κράζω	κράξω	ἔκραζον	ἔκραξα	κέκραγα
sow	σπείρω	-------	-------	ἔσπειρα	-------
take up, away	αἴρω	ἀρῶ	-------	ἦρα	ἦρκα
open	ἀνοίγω	-------	ἀνέῳξα	ἀνέῳγα	-------
release	ἀπολύω	ἀπολύσω	ἀπέλυον	ἀπέλυσα	-------

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (παντός, πάσης, παντό (genitive)) every

πάντες, πᾶσαι, πάντα all

ὅταν whenever (with a subjunctive verb)

ἰδού see, behold

ἵνα in order to (with a subjunctive verb)

Exercises - Lesson 33

A. Practice with Indicative and Subjunctive Forms

- Analyze the following verbs by listing the mood, tense, voice, person, and number.

	Tense	Voice	Mood	Person	Number
βαλλώμεθα	present	middle	subjunctive	1st	pl
βάλλομεν					
βάλλωμεν					
ἀκούῃ					
ἀκούθῃ					
ἀκούεται					
ἤκουσε					
ἀκούσηται					
ἀκούει					
ἠκούσατο					
ἀκούσῃ					
ἀκούηται					
ἠκούθη					
δουλεύουσι					
κελευσόμεθα					
πείθωσι					
κλειθῶ					
κράζεσθε					
ἐδιώξαμεν					
πιστεύσῃς					
ἐθεραπεύσατο					
μανθάνωμαι					
ἐβασιλεύθησαν					

B. Translation and Syntax

- Translate each sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.

ὁ Ἰησους κατέβη ἀπὸ οὐρανοῦ ἵνα ἀπολύῃ

τὰς ἁμαρτίας ἡμῶν.

a. What tense is κατέβη? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

- What voice is κατέβη? What does this voice indicate?

- What mood is κατέβη? What does this mood indicate?

b. What voice is ἀπολύῃ? What does this voice indicate?

- What mood is ἀπολύῃ? What does this mood indicate?

- What tense is ἀπολύῃ? What does this tense indicate in a ἵνα purpose clause?

c. What case is each of these nouns? Why is each the case that it is in this sentence?

- οὐρανοῦ

- ἁμαρτίας

d. The noun ἁμαρτία is specific because it has an article (τὰ). What word makes it specific? Explain.

e. What kind of word is ἡμῶν? Explain.

- What case is ἡμῶν? Why is it this case?

2.

κηρύσσωμεν τὸ μακάριον εὐαγγέλιον Χριστοῦ σῴζεσθαι πάντας ἀνθρώπους

ἀπό θανάτου.

a. What mood is κηρύσσωμεν? What does this mood indicate in this sentence?

- What tense is κηρύσσωμεν? What does this tense indicate in this sentence?

b. What case is each of these nouns? Explain why each is the case that it is in this sentence.

- εὐαγγέλιον

- Χριστοῦ

- ἀνθρώπους

- θανάτου

c. Each of these words is an adjective. Which noun does each modify? What does each tell us about the noun it modifies?

- μακάριον

- πάντας

d. What kind of infinitive is σώζεσθαι? Explain.

- What voice is σώζεσθαι?

- What tense is σώζεσθαι? What kind of action does this tense indicate? Explain.

e. We know from the context that θανάτου is a specific death, namely, eternal death. What does the lack of the article with θανάτου stress? Explain.

C. Translation of Bible passages

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each underlined verb or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction), or "prep" (preposition), or "rel pro" (relative pronoun) above a word if it is one of these three kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. Matthew 25:31

Ὅταν ἔλθῃ ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ἐν τῇ δόξῃ αὐτοῦ καθίσει

ἐπὶ θρόνου δόξης αὐτοῦ.

a. What mood is ἔλθῃ? Why is it this mood in this sentence?

- What voice is ἔλθῃ? What does this voice indicate?

- What tense is ἔλθῃ? What does this tense indicate in this ὅταν clause?

b. What tense is καθίσει? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

c. Why is τῇ δόξῃ the case that you wrote above it?

- What does the article τῇ indicate?

d. Why is θρόνου the case that you wrote above it?

- θρόνου is specific because of the genitives that follow it in the sentence. What does the lack of an article stress about θρόνου? Explain.

e. Why is δόξης specific even though it doesn't have an article?

- What does the lack of an article stress about δόξης? Explain.

f. What kind of pronoun is αὐτοῦ in both of its uses in this sentence?

- To whom does it refer in both uses?

- Why are both the case that you wrote above them?

2. John 3:16

τὸν υἱὸν	τὸν μονογενῆ	ἔδωκεν,	ἵνα	πᾶς	ὁ πιστεύων	εἰς	αὐτὸν	
	the only one	he gave,						

ἔχῃ	ζωὴν	αἰώνιον.

a. Why is τὸν υἱὸν the case that you wrote above it?

b. What kind of clause is the ἵνα clause in this sentence?

c. What mood is ἔχῃ?

- What tense is ἔχῃ? What kind of action does this tense indicate? Explain.

- What voice is ἔχῃ? What does this voice indicate?

d. What kind of participle is ὁ πιστεύων?

- What is Jesus stressing by the use of this kind of participle?

- What tense is πιστεύων?

- What kind of action does this tense indicate? Explain.

e. Why is αὐτὸν the case that you wrote above it?

- To whom does αὐτὸν refer?

f. ζωὴν does not have an article, but it is specific. Why?

- What is Jesus stressing by not using an article with ζωὴν? Explain.

g. What kind of word is αἰώνιον?

- What case, number, and gender is αἰώνιον?

- Why is it this case, number, and gender?

D. Memory Work

- Keep reviewing the vocables you have learned in previous lessons.
- Make out vocable cards for the words in the vocabulary of this lesson (Part E).
- Memorize the forms of the subjunctive mood.

Lesson Thirty-Four

Unit H. Verbs: Voice, Mood, Irregular

Lesson 31 Middle and Passive Voice
Lesson 32 Imperative Mood
Lesson 33 Subjunctive and Optative Moods
Lesson 34 Linking Verbs (εἰμί, γίνομαι)
Lesson 35 Compound and Contract Verbs
Lesson 36 -μι Verbs

A. Linking Verbs

1. A linking verb is a verb that does not state an action. Instead, it does one of three things:
   a. It can link (or join) two nouns that are the same or similar to each other.

      John 15:5

ἐγώ	εἰμι	ἡ ἄμθελος,	ὑμεῖς	[ἐστὲ]	τὰ κλήματα.
I	am	the vine,	you	are	the branches.

      N.B. Jesus says he is similar to a vine, and believers are similar to the branches of a vine.

   b. It can state that something or someone exists.

      Hebrews 11:6

δεῖ	τὸν προσερχόμενον	τῷ θεῷ	πιστεῦσαι	ὅτι	ἔστιν.
It is necessary	the one who comes	to God	believe	that	he is (i.e. he exists).

   c. It can indicate that a condition (or state of being) exists.

      Acts 10:9ff

Πέτρος	ἀνέβη	ἐπὶ	τὸ δῶμα	προσεύξασθαι…	ἐγένετο	πρόσπεινος.
Peter	went up	on	the roof	to pray…	he was	hungry.

      N.B. Peter was in the condition (or state) of being hungry.

2. The two verbs that are used most often in Greek as linking verbs are εἰμί and γίνομαι.
3. Both of the two similar nouns that are joined by a linking verb (cf. 1,a above) will be in the nominative case. The noun before the linking verb is the subject. The noun following the verb is called a predicate nominative ("predicate" is another word for "verb").
4. The adjective that follows a linking verb stating the condition that exists (cf. 1,c above) will be in the nominative case. It is called a predicate adjective.

B. The Forms of the Linking Verbs

1. The forms of γίνομαι are all in the middle voice, and they are the same forms as other verbs in the middle voice.
2. The forms of εἰμί are only in the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

Present Active Indicative		Present Active Subjunctive	Present Active Infinitive	
εἰμί	I am	ὦ	εἶναι	to be
εἶ	You are	ᾖς		
ἐστί	He/she/it is	ᾖ		
ἐσμέν	We are	ὦμεν		
ἐστέ	You are	ἦτε		
εἰσί	They are	ὦσι		

Present Active Participle			Present Active Imperative	
ὤν	οὖσα	ὄν	ἴσθι	you (sg) be!
ὄντος	οὔσης	ὄντος	ἔστε	you (pl) be!
ὄντι	οὔσῃ	ὄντι	ἔστω	let him be
ὄντα	οὖσαν	ὄν	ἔστωσαν	let them be
ὄντες	οὔσαι	ὄντα	(or ἔστων)	(let them be)
ὄντων	οὔσων	ὄντων		
οὖσι	οὔσαις	ὄυσι		
ὄντας	οὔσας	ὄντα		

N.B. These forms are the same as the endings of all present active participles. (cf. Lesson 26,A,4)

Imperfect Middle Indicative

ἦμην	I was
ἦς	You were
ἦν	He/she/it was
ἦμην	We were
ἦτε	You were
ἦσαν	They were

Future Middle Indicative

ἔσομαι	I will be
ἔσῃ	You will be
ἔσται	He/she/it will be
ἐσόμεθα	We will be
ἔσεσθε	You will be
ἔσονται	They will be

N.B. All forms of εἰμί in the Imperfect and Future tenses are in the middle voice only.

C. Vocabulary

- The forms of εἰμί.

Exercises - Lesson 34

A. Practice with Linking Verbs

- Analyze the following verbs by listing the mood, tense, voice, person, and number.

	Tense	Voice	Mood	Person	Number
ἐστί	present	active	indicative	3rd	sg
ἔσομαι					
γέγονας					
εἰσί					
εἶναι					
ἐγίνεται					
ἐγένεται					
ᾖ					
ἔσονται					
γενήσεται					
ἔστω					
ἦτε					
γίνωμαι					
γένοιτο					
ὦσι					

B. Translation and Syntax

- Translate each sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.

᾿Ιησοῦς ἐστὶ ὁ υἱὸς θεοῦ ὃς ἐγένετο ἄνθρωπος ἵνα νικήση

θάνατον ἡμῖν

a. What mood, person, and number is ἐστὶ?

- In what condition (or state of being) does the predicate nominative indicate that Jesus exists?

- What tense is ἐστὶ? What does this tense indicate about the condition that exists?

b. What kind of word is ὃς? Explain.

- What case, number, and gender is ὃς?

- Why is it this number and gender?

- Why is it this case?

c. What mood, person, and number is ἐγένετο?

- What tense is ἐγένετο? What does tense indicate?

d. What case is ἄνθρωπος? Why is it this case?

- The lack of an article with ἄνθρωπος indicates that the quality of this noun is stressed. Explain why the quality of ἄνθρωπος would be stressed in this sentence.

e. What kind of clause does ἵνα introduce? Explain.

f. What mood is νικήσῃ? Why is it this mood?

- What tense is νικήσῃ? What does this tense indicate in a ἵνα clause?

- What person and number is νικήσῃ? Why is it this person and number?

g. What case is θάνατον? Why is it this case?

h. What kind of word is ἡμῖν?

- What person and number is it?

- ἡμῖν is a dative of advantage. Explain.

C. Translation of a Bible passage

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each underlined verb or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction), or "prep" (preposition), or "pron" (pronoun) above a word if it is one of these three kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. Romans 6:15

ἁμαρτήσωμεν	ὅτι	οὐκ	ἐσμὲν	ὑπὸ	νόμον	ἀλλὰ	ὑπὸ	χάριν;
	because					but		

μὴ γένοιτο.

a. What person and number is ἁμαρτήσωμεν?

- What mood is ἁμαρτήσωμεν? Why is it this mood?

b. Analyze ἐσμὲν by giving the tense, voice, mood, person and number.

c. ἐσμὲν introduces two conditions (states of being) that exist: "under law" (that is, having to do the law in order to be saved) and "under grace" (that is, having salvation as a free gift from God).
- What does the particle οὐκ and the present tense of ἐσμὲν indicate about the existence of the condition of ὑπὸ νόμον?

d. The writer (Paul) leaves the article off both νόμον and χάριν to stress the difference in quality or essence of each of these nouns.
- What is the quality (basic meaning, essence) of νόμον?

- What is the quality (basic meaning, essence) of χάριν?

- What is the difference in quality of these two nouns that the writer (Paul) is stressing?

e. Analyze γένοιτο by giving the tense, voice, mood, person and number.

- Why is it this mood?

- What is the writer (Paul) expressing by the use of μὴ with this mood?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons.
2. Memorize the forms of εἰμί (indicative, subjunctive, imperative, infinitive, participle).

Lesson Thirty-Five

Unit H. Verbs: Voice, Mood, Irregular

Lesson 31 Middle and Passive Voice
Lesson 32 Imperative Mood
Lesson 33 Subjunctive and Optative Moods
Lesson 34 Linking Verbs (εἰμί, γίνομαι)
Lesson 35 Compound and Contract Verbs
Lesson 36 -μι Verbs

We have put these two types of verbs in this one lesson because both involve the contraction or shortening of forms when the form is hard to pronounce (i.e. a number of vowels appear in a row in the word).

A. The Form of Compound Verbs

1. A compound verb is a verb that is a combination of a preposition and a verb.
2. You have learned the verb ἔρχομαι. You have also learned the verbs ἀπέρχομαι, εἰσέρχομαι, ἐξέρχομαι, and προσέρχομαι. The last four verbs are compound verbs. The prepositions ἀπό, εἰς, ἐκ, and πρός are combined with the basic verb ἔρχομαι to form these additional verbs.
3. The only thing that is different about compound verbs is how an augment is added to the verb. The augment does not go in front of the preposition. It goes between the preposition and the basic stem. Like this:
   - The imperfect of προσκυνέω is προσεκύνουν (προσ + ε + κυν).
4. If the augment results in a word that is difficult to pronounce, a change is made to make the word easier to pronounce. Like this:
   - The imperfect of εἰσέρχομαι is εἰσηρχόμην (altered from εἰς + ε + ερχ).

B. Contract Verbs

1. A contract verb is a verb whose basic stem ends in one of three vowels:
α (ζάω), ε (καλέω), or ο (πληρόω).
2. When an ending that begins with a vowel is added to the stem of these verbs which ends in a vowel, the result is a word that is hard to pronounce.

3. The following chart lists all the possible combinations and the contraction (shortening) that takes place in each instance.

	ε	η	ο	ω	ει	ῃ	ου	οι
α	α	α	ω	ω	ᾳ	ᾳ	ω	ῳ
ο	ου	ω	ου	ω	οι	οι	ου	οι
ε	ει	η	ου	ω	ει	ῃ	ου	οι

4. This contraction (shortening) in contract verbs takes place only in the present and imperfect tenses. The future and aorist tenses have a sigma (σ), and the perfect tense has a kappa (κ), between the stem and the endings. In these three tenses there aren't a number of vowels in a row making a verb hard to pronounce.
5. Below there are three contract verbs (verb stems ending in -α, -ε, and -ο) with all the uncontracted and then the contracted forms of the present and imperfect tenses. The uncontracted forms are listed so that you can see the combination of vowels (cf. underlining) that leads to the contractions in this kind of verb.

Present Active Indicative

ζαω	ζῶ	καλεω	καλῶ	πληροω	πληρῶ
ζαεις	ζᾷς	καλεεις	καλεῖς	πληροεις	πληροῖς
ζαει	ζᾷ	καλεει	καλεῖ	πληροει	πληροῖ
ζαομεν	ζῶμεν	καλεομεν	καλοῦμεν	πληροομεν	πληροῦμεν
ζαετε	ζᾶτε	καλεετε	καλεῖτε	πληροετε	πληροῦτε
ζαουσι	ζῶσι	καλεουσι	καλοῦσι	πληροουσι	πληροῦσι

N.B. All the forms have a circumflex accent over the contracted part of the verb.

Present Active Subjunctive

ζαω	ζῶ	καλεω	καλῶ	πληεροω	πληρῶ
ζαῃς	ζᾷς	καλεῃς	καλῇς	πληροῃς	πληροῖς
ζαῃ	ζᾷ	καλεῃ	καλῇ	πληροῃ	πληροῖ
ζαωμεν	ζῶμεν	καλεωμεν	καλῶμεν	πληροωμεν	πληρῶμεν
ζαητε	ζᾶτε	καλεητε	καλῆτε	πληροητε	πληρῶτε
ζαωσι	ζῶσι	καλεωσι	καλῶσι	πληροωσι	πληρῶσι

N.B. The present active indicative and subjunctive forms of ζάω are the same.

Present Middle/Passive Indicative

ζαομαι	ζῶμαι	καλεομαι	καλοῦμαι	πληροομαι	πληροῦμαι
ζαῃ	ζᾷ	καλεῃ	καλῇ	πληροῃ	πληροῖ
ζαεται	ζᾶται	καλεεται	καλεῖται	πληροοται	πληροῦται
ζαομεθα	ζώμεθα	καλεομεθα	καλούμεθα	πληροομεθα	πληρούμεθα
ζαεσθε	ζᾶσθε	καλεεσθε	καλεῖσθε	πληροεσθε	πληροῦσθε
ζαονται	ζῶνται	καλεονται	καλοῦνται	πλεροονται	πληροῦνται

Present Middle/Passive Subjunctive

ζαομαι	ζῶμαι	καλεωμαι	καλῶμαι	πληροωμαι	πληρῶμαι
ζαῃ	ζᾷ	καλεῃ	καλῇ	πληροῃ	πληροῖ
ζαηται	ζᾶται	καλεηται	καλῆται	πληροηται	πληρῶται
ζαωμεθα	ζώμεθα	καλεωμεθα	καλώμεθα	πληροωμεθα	πληρώμεθα
ζαησθε	ζᾶσθε	καλεησθε	καλῆσθε	πληροωσθε	πληρῶσθε
ζαωνται	ζῶνται	καλεωνται	καλῶνται	πλεροωνται	πληρῶνται

N.B. The present middle/passive indicative and subjunctive forms of ζάω are the same.

Imperfect Active Indicative

εζαον	ἔζων	εκαλεον	ἐκάλουν	επληροον	ἐπλήρουν
εζαες	ἔζας	εκαλεες	ἐκάλεις	επληροες	ἐπλήρους
εζαε	ἔζα	εκαλεε	ἐκάλει	επληροε	ἐπλήρου
εζαομεν	ἐζῶμεν	εκαλεομεν	ἐκαλοῦμεν	επληροομεν	ἐπληροῦμεν
εζαετε	ἐζᾶτε	εκαλεετε	ἐκαλεῖτε	επληροετε	ἐπληροῦτε
εζαον	ἔζων	εκαλεον	ἐκάλουν	επληροον	ἐπλήρουν

Imperfect Middle/Passive Indicative

εζαομην	ἐζώμην	εκαλεομην	ἐκαλούμην	επληροομην	ἐπληρούμην
εζαου	ἐζῶ	εκαλεου	ἐκαλοῦ	επληροου	ἐπληροῦ
εζαετο	ἐζᾶτο	εκαλεετο	ἐκαλεῖτο	επληροετο	ἐπληροῦτο
εζαομεθα	ἐζώμεθα	εκαλεομεθα	ἐκαλούμεθα	επληροομεθα	ἐπληρούμεθα
εζαεσθε	ἐζᾶσθε	εκαλεεσθε	ἐκαλεῖσθε	επληροεσθε	ἐπληροῦσθε
εζαοντο	ἐζῶντο	εκαλεοντο	ἐκαλοῦντο	επληροοντο	ἐπληρουντο

Imperative – Present Tense

2nd sg	ζαε	ζᾶ	καλεε	κάλει	πληροε	πλήρου
2nd pl	ζαετω	ζάτω	καλεετω	καλείτω	πληροετω	πληρούτω
3rd sg	ζαετε	ζάτε	καλεετε	καλεῖτε	πληροετε	πληροῦτε
3rd pl	ζαετωσαν	ζάτωσαν	καλεετωσαν	καλείτωσαν	πληροετωσαν	πληρούτωσαν

6. How can a person recognize these forms of contract verbs in the present and imperfect tenses in the New Testament? Perhaps the simplest way is this:
   a. Tense: Look at the beginning of each form of a contract verb. If it has an augment on a present stem, it is imperfect tense. If there is no augment it is present tense.
   b. Voice: Look at the endings which will tell you whether it is active voice or middle/passive voice.
   c. Mood: This is more difficult to recognize. Remembering two things will help greatly.
      - Verbs ending in -αω = the indicative and subjunctive forms are the same in the active voice, and also in the middle/passive voice.
      - Verbs ending in -εω and -οω = the indicative forms usually have the diphthongs ει or ου or οι following the stem, but the subjunctive forms have an η or ω following the stem.

C. Vocabulary

1. Special review of all contract verbs learned previously:

-αω verbs = ἀγαπάω, γεννάω, ἐρωτάω, ζάω, θανατάω, νικάω, ὁράω
-εω verbs = αἰτεω, ἀκολουθέω, ἀσθενέω, ἐπιθυμέω, ζητέω, καλέω, λαλέω, μαρτυρέω, οἰκέω, ὁμολογέω, παρακαλέω, περιπατέω, ποιέω, προσκυνέω, τηρέω
-οω verbs = ἐλευθερόω, πληρόω

2. New vocables:

ἡ ὀψία,-ας	evening	ἄλλος,-η,-ο	other, another
τὸ ἔθνος,-ους	nation, Gentiles	τὸ πρόσωπον,-ου	face, appearance

Exercises - Lesson 35

A. Practice with Contract Verbs

- Indicate the tense, voice, mood, person, and number of each of these contract verbs.

	Tense	Voice	Mood	Person	Number
μαρτυρεῖται					
ἐμαρτυρεῖσθε					
ἐγέννας					
γεννᾷς (2)					
ἐλευθεροῦμεν					
ἐλευθερῶσι					
παρακελείτω					
ἐπαρακελεῖτο					
παρακαλεῖτε					
νικώμεθα (2)					
ἐνικᾶτε					
ποιείτωσαν					
ποιεῖσθε					
ἐποιεῖτο					
τηοῦμεν					
τηρῶμεν					

B. Translation and Syntax

- Translate each sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the question about the words in each sentence.

1.

ἡ ἐκκλησία ἡμῶν ἐζήτει τόπον ἵνα προσκυνῶμεν τὸν θεὸν

τῇ ἁγίῃ νυκτί.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is it this case in this sentence?

- ἐκκλησία

- τόπον

- θεὸν

- νυκτί

b. These two nouns have an article and, therefore, are specific. Which word in the context makes each specific? Explain how that word makes the noun specific.

- ἐκκλησία

- νυκτί

c. The word τόπον doesn't have an article. Is it indefinite or qualitative? Why?

d. What kind of word is ἡμῶν?

- What case is it? Why is it this case?

e. Analyze the verb ἐζήτει:

tense: _____ person: _____
voice: _____ number: _____
mood: _____

- What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἐζήτει? Explain.

- Why is ἐζήτει the person and number you indicated above?

f. Analyze the verb προσκυνῶμεν:

tense: _____ person: _____
voice: _____ number: _____
mood: _____

- What kind of action is indicated by the tense of προσκυνῶμεν? Explain.

- Why is προσκυνῶμεν the mood that you indicated above?

2.

ὁ τυφλὸς προφήτης ἐπαρακάλει, καλεῖτε ἐπὶ ὄνομα τοῦ κυρίου

τῇ ὅλῃ καρδίᾳ ὑμῶν.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is it this case in this sentence?

- προφήτης

- ὄνομα

- κυρίου

- καρδία

b. What kind of words are τυφλὸς and ὅλῃ? What is their use in the sentence?

c. Analyze the verb ἐπαρακάλει:

tense: _____ person: _____

voice: _____ number: _____

mood: _____

d. Analyze the verb καλεῖτε:

tense: _____ person: _____

voice: _____ number: _____

mood: _____

- What kind of action is indicated by the mood you indicated for this verb?

- What kind of action is indicated by the tense of καλεῖτε?

C. Translation of a Bible passage

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each underlined verb or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "conj" (conjunction), or "prep" (preposition), or "pro" (pronoun) above a word if it is one of these three kinds of words.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1. 1 John 4:2

πᾶν πνεῦμα ὃ ὁμολογεῖ Ἰησοῦν ἐν σαρκὶ ἐληλυθότα

ἐστὶ ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ.

a. What case is πᾶν πνεῦμα? Why is it this case in this sentence?

b. What kind of word is ὃ?

- What case, number, and gender is it?

- Why is it this number and gender?

- Why is it this case?

c. What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ὁμολογεῖ? Explain.

d. Why is Ἰησοῦν in the accusative case?

e. Analyze ἐληλυθότα.

- It is a complementary participle. Explain.

- What tense and voice is it?

- What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἐληλυθότα?

- What number and case is ἐληλυθότα? Why is it this number and case?

f. What does the prepositional phrase ἐν σαρκὶ modify? Explain.

g. The noun σαρκὶ has no article in order to stress the quality (basic meaning or essence) of this word. Why would John put stress on the quality of this word in this sentence?

h. What tense, number, and person is ἐστὶ?

- What does the tense of ἐστὶ indicate about the condition (state of being) in this sentence?

- What is the subject of ἐστὶ?

i. The prepositional phrase ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ expresses source. Explain.

j. What does the phrase ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ modify? Explain.

- What then is the condition (state of being) John is expressing in this sentence? Explain.

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you learned in previous lessons. Review especially the contract verbs learned earlier (cf. C,1 of this lesson).
2. Make out vocable cards for the five new vocables added in this lesson (C,2).
3. Either memorize the forms of the contract verbs in the present and imperfect tenses, or memorize the keys to recognizing the present and imperfect forms of contract verbs (cf. B,5 of this lesson).

Lesson Thirty-Six

Unit H. Verbs: Voice, Mood, Irregular

Lesson 31 Middle and Passive Voice
Lesson 32 Imperative Mood
Lesson 33 Subjunctive and Optative Moods
Lesson 34 Linking Verbs (εἰμί, γίνομαι)
Lesson 35 Compound and Contract Verbs
Lesson 36 -μι Verbs

A. The Use of -μι Verbs

1. The verbs we will learn in this lesson are called -μι verbs because the basic form listed in Greek lexicons ends in -μι (δίδωμι) instead of -ω (θύω).
2. Most of the Greek verbs are -ω verbs. There are only 24 -μι verbs used in the New Testament, but some are used very often. The 8 listed in the vocabulary of this lesson are used 50 or more times. One, δίδωμι, is used 450 times.

B. The Forms of -μι Verbs

1. The -μι verbs have basic stems that end in four different vowels: α, ε, ο, υ.
   a. Because the stems end in vowels, the verb endings are added to the stem without using a connecting vowel as is done in many forms of -ω verbs.
   b. The vowel at the end of the stem can change within a tense and from tense to tense.
   (e.g. α ⟷ η ε ⟷ η ο ⟷ ω)
2. The -μι verbs often have major changes in the stem from one tense to another.
   (e.g. διδο / δω ---- αφιη / αφη)
3. Because of the changes noted in 1,b and 2 above, it is necessary to memorize the principal parts of -μι verbs carefully. Otherwise you may not even recognize that the forms of the various tenses are forms of the same -μι verb.
4. The forms of -μι verbs are different from those of -ω verbs only in the active voice of the present and aorist tenses.

Pres. Act. Ind. -ω Verb	Pres. Act. Ind. -μι Verbs (endings underlined)		
θύω	δίδωμι	ἵστημι	τίθημι
θύεις	δίδως	ἵστης	τίθης
θύει	δίδωσι	ἵστησι	τίθησι
θύομεν	δίδωμεν	ἵσταμεν	τίθεμεν
θύετε	δίδοτε	ἵστατε	τίθετε
θύουσι	διδόασι	ἵστασι	τιθέασι

N.B. The endings of -μι verbs are different from -ω verbs.
The vowels at the end of the stems also change.

Pres. Act. Subj. -ω Verb	Pres. Act. Subj. -μι Verbs
θύω	διδῶ
θύῃς	διδῷς
θύῃ	διδῷ
θύωμεν	διδῶμεν
θύητε	διδῶτε
θύωσι	διδῶσι

N.B. ἵστημι and τίθημι are not used in the present, active, subjunctive in the New Testament.

Aorist Act. Ind. -ω Verb	Aorist. Act. Ind. -μι Verbs		
ἔθυσα	ἔδωκα	ἔστησα	ἔθηκα
ἔθυσας	ἔδωκας	ἔστησας	ἔθηκας
ἔθυσε	ἔδωκε	ἔστησε	ἔθηκε
ἐθύσαμεν	ἐδώκαμεν	ἐστησαμεν	ἐθηκαμεν
ἐθύσατε	ἐδώκατε	ἐστησατε	ἐθηκατε
ἔθυσαν	ἔδωκαν	ἔστησαν	ἔθηκαν

N.B. The endings of -μι verbs are the same as -ω verbs in the aorist, active, indicative.
Some -μι verbs have the letter sigma (σ) after the stem. Other -μι verbs have the letter kappa (κ) after the stem.

Aorist Act. Subj. -ω Verb	Aorist. Act. Subj. -μι Verbs		
θύσω	δῶ	στήσω	θῶ
θύσῃς	δῷς	στήσῃς	θῇς
θύσῃ	δῷ	στήσῃ	θῇ
θύσωμεν	δῶμεν	στήσωμεν	θῶμεν
θύσητε	δῶτε	στήσητε	θῆτε
θύσωσι	δῶσι	στήσησι	θῆσι

N.B. The -μι verbs that have κ after the stem in the aorist indicative don't have this letter in the aorist subjunctive, and so they are very short forms.

Pres. Act. Imperative -ω		Pres. Act. Imperative -μι		
2nd sg	θύε	δίδου	(not used in	τίθει
3rd sg	θυέτο	διδότω	NT)	τιθέτω
2nd pl	θύετε	δίδοτε		τίθετε
3rd pl	θυετωσαν	διδότωσαν		τιθέτωσαν

Aorist Act. Imperative -ω Verb		Aorist Act. Imperative -μι Verbs		
2nd sg	θῦσον	δός	στῆθι	-------
3rd sg	θυσάτω	δότω	στήτω	-------
2nd pl	θύσατε	δότε	στῆτε	θέτε
3rd pl	θυσάτωσαν	δότωσαν	στήτωσαν	θέτωσαν

Pres. Act. Infinitive -ω Verb	Pres. Act. Infinitive -μι Verbs		
θύειν	διδόναι	ἵστῆναι	τιθέναι

Aorist Act. Infinitive -ω Verb	Aorist Act. Infinitive -μι Verbs		
θῦσαι	δοῦναι	στῆναι	τιθῆναι

Pres. Act. Participle -ω Verb		Pres. Act. Participle -μι Verbs		
Masc.	θύων, -οντος	διδούς, -όντος	(not used in NT)	τιθείς, -έντος
Fem.	θύουσα, -ας	διδοῦσα, -ας		τιθεῖσα, -ας
Neut.	θύον, -οντος	διδόν, -οντος		τιθέν, -έντος

Aorist Act. Participle -ω Verb		Aorist Act. Participle -μι Verbs		
Masc.	θύσας	δούς, -όντος	στάς, -άντος	θείς, -έντος
Fem.	θύσασα	δοῦσα, -ης	στᾶσα, -ης	θεῖσα, -ης
Neut.	θύσαν	δόν, -όντος	στάν, -άντος	θέν, -έντος

C. Vocabulary

give	δίδωμι	δώσω	ἐδίδουν	ἔδωκα	δέδωκα
entrust, hand over	παραδίδωμι	παραδώσω	παρεδίδουν	παρέδωκα	παραδέδωκα
stand	ἵστημι	στήσω	ἵστην	ἕστηκα	ἕστηκα
get up, raise	ἀνίστημι	ἀναστήσω	ἀνίστην	ἀνέστηκα	-------
let go, permit, forgive	ἀφίημι	ἀφήσω	ἤφιον	ἀφῆκα	-------
put, place	τίθημι	θήσω	ἐτίθουν	ἔθηκα	τέθηκα
destroy, kill	ἀπόλλυμι	ἀπολέσω	ἀπώλλυον	ἀπώλεσα	-------
show, explain	δείκνυμι	δείξω	-------	ἔδειξα	δέδειχα

Exercises - Lesson 36

A. Practice with -μι Verbs

- Analyze each verb form: basic verb, tense, voice, mood, person, and number.

	Basic Verb	Tense	Voice	Mood	Person	Number
ἀναστῆναι	ἀνίστημι	aorist	active	infinitive	-----	-----
παραδῶτε						
ἠφίομεν						
παραδιδόμεθα						
ἀπώλετο						
ἔθηκαν						
δείκνυσι						
ἀφίετε						
ἀνιστήσησι						
ἀπολλύει						
παραδίδοται						
ἀφῶμεν						
δείξεις						
παραδοῦναι						
τιθέασι						

B. Translation and Syntax

- Translate the words of the sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.
θεὸς παρέδωκε τὸν μόνον υἱὸν εἰς θάνατον ἀπολέσαι τὴν ἐξουσίαν ἁμαρτίας ὑμῶν.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is it this case in this sentence?

- θεὸς

- υἱὸν

- θάνατον

- ἐξουσίαν

- ἁμαρτίας

b. The article τὸν makes υἱὸν specific. What word tells us what is specific about υἱὸν?

c. What tense is παρέδωκε?

- What kind of action does this tense indicate? Explain.

d. What kind of word is μόνον?

- What is its use in this sentence? Explain.

e. What does the phrase εἰς θάνατον modify? Explain.

f. What kind of infinitive is ἀπολέσαι? Explain.

- What tense is ἀπολέσαι?

g. ἐξουσίαν has an article, so it is specific. What word makes it specific? Explain.

h. ἁμαρτίας has no article, but it is specific. Explain.

- What is being stressed since no article is used with ἁμαρτίας? Explain.

2.

ὁ προφήτης κυρίου ἵστησι ἐν τῇ πόλει

λέγων τὸ ῥήμα τοῦ βασιλέως τῷ λαῷ.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is it this case in this sentence?

- προφήτης

- κυρίου

- πόλει

- ῥήμα

- βασιλέως

- λαῷ

b. What tense is ἵστησι? What kind of action does this tense indicate? Explain.

c. λέγων is an adverbial temporal participle. Explain.

- What tense is λέγων? What does this tense indicate about the type of temporal participle λέγων is?

d. These two nouns are specific. Explain what is specific about each?

- τὸ ῥήμα

- τοῦ βασιλέως

C. Translation of a Bible passage

- Translate the underlined words. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each underlined verb or the case above each underlined noun.
- Write "prep" (preposition) or "pron" (pronoun) above a word if it is this kind of word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

Luke 11:4

<u>ἄφες</u> <u>ἡμῖν</u> <u>τὰς ἁμαρτίας</u> <u>ἡμῶν</u> γὰρ <u>ἀφίομεν</u> <u>παντὶ</u> ὀφείλοντι <u>ἡμῖν.</u>

a. What mood is ἄφες? Explain its use in this sentence.

- What tense is ἄφες? What kind of action does this tense indicate in this mood?

- What person and number is ἄφες?

b. What case is τὰς ἁμαρτίας? Why is it this case?

- ἁμαρτίας has an article, so it is specific. Explain how it is specific.

c. What kind of word is ἡμῖν?

- What case is ἡμῖν? Why is it this case?

d. What kind of word is ἡμῶν?

- What case is ἡμῶν? Why is it this case?

e. What tense is ἀφίομεν? What kind of action does this tense indicate? Explain.

- What person and number is ἀφίομεν?

- What voice is ἀφίομεν? What does the use of this voice indicate?

f. What case is παντὶ? Why is it this case?

g. ὀφείλοντι is an adjectival participle. What case, number, and gender is it?

- Why is it this case, number, and gender?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocables you have learned in previous lessons.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words in the vocabulary of this lesson.

Lesson Thirty-Seven

Unit I. Conjunctions

Lesson 37 Coordinating
Lesson 38 Subordinating
Lesson 39 Καί and γάρ Explanatory

A. Conjunctions

1. The word "conjunct" refers to the action of joining together. A "conjunction" is a word that joins two or more things together.
2. A conjunction often joins single words together. The single words that can be joined by a conjunction are nouns, adjectives, verbs, and verbal forms such as infinitives and participles. Here is an example in which the conjunction καί joins three adjectives (underlined) that describe God's command (not to covet).
   Romans 7:12

ἡ ἐντολὴ	ἁγία	καὶ	δικαία	καὶ	ἀγαθή.
This command [is]	holy	and	just	and	good.

3. A conjunction can also join two phrases (usually prepositional phrases). In the following example the conjunction ἀλλά contrasts two phrases (underlined) that express means by which people are saved.

σώζομεθα	οὐκ	διὰ	ἔργων	νόμου	ἀλλά	διὰ	πίστεως	Χριστοῦ.
We are saved	not	by	doing	the law	but	by	faith	in Christ.

4. A conjunction can join two clauses, each of which expresses a complete thought. Here is an example of two such clauses (underlined) joined by the conjunction δε.
   Matthew 1:18ff

Μαρίας	εὑρέθη	ἐν γαστρι ἔχουσα,
Mary	was found	to be pregnant,

δὲ	Ἰωσὴφ	ἐβουλήθη	λάθρᾳ	ἀπολῦσαι	αὐτήν.
and	Joseph	planned	privately	to divorce	her.

5. In this lesson we will look only at conjunctions that join two equal things such as those listed in 2, 3, and 4 above. Since these conjunctions join two equal things, we call them coordinating conjunctions. To "coordinate" means to join equal things to one another.
6. A conjunction can also join two unequal things such as an independent clause (a clause that expresses a complete thought) and a dependent clause (a clause that by itself does not express a complete thought). We will look at this kind of conjunction in the next lesson.

B. The Coordinating Conjunctions Used Most Often in the New Testament

1. καί, τέ ("and")
   a. καί and τέ coordinate single nouns, adjectives, verbs, infinitives, and participles.
      For an example of καί coordinating adjectives confer A,2 above.
      Acts 12:8 is an example of καί coordinating two imperatives (underlined).

περιβαλοῦ	τὸ ἱμάτιόν	σου	**καὶ**	ἀκολούθει	μοι.
Put on	the garment	of yours	and	follow	me!

      Acts 10:22

ἀνὴρ	φοβούμενος	τὸν θεόν,	μαρτυρούμενός **τε**	ὑπὸ	τῶν Ἰουδαίων.
A man	who fears	God	**and** is respected	by	the Jews.

      N.B. καί comes between the words it coordinates; τέ comes after the second word of the two words that it connects.
   b. καί and τέ also coordinate phrases, clauses, and sentences.
      In Acts 4:9-11 Peter says that the man was healed by that same Jesus whom the Jewish leaders rejected. Then, in verse 12, Peter begins with καί and adds a second equally important truth: They will find salvation in no one else but Jesus.
      Acts 2:37

κατενύγησαν	τὴν καρδίαν	εἶπόν **τε**	πρὸς	τὸν Πέτρον
They were cut to	the heart	**and** they said	to	Peter,

Τί	ποιήσωμεν;
"What	shall we do?"

      N.B. καί comes between the two clauses it joins; τέ comes after the first word of the second clause
2. ἀλλά ("but")
   a. ἀλλά often contrasts two single nouns, verbs, adjectives, infinitives, and participles. In the following example, ἀλλά is used to contrast two adjectives used as nouns (underlined).
      Matthew 9:13

οὐ ἦλθον	καλέσαι	δικαίους	**ἀλλὰ**	ἁμαρτωλούς.
I didn't come	to call	righteous	**but**	sinners.

   b. ἀλλά also contrasts phrases, clauses, sentences, and whole paragraphs. Confer A,3 above.
   c. Sometimes ἀλλά contrasts a thought that follows with something that is not stated but only implied in the preceding words.
      In Acts 20:19 there are some Gentiles at the door asking to see Peter. Verse 20 begins with ἀλλά by which the Holy Spirit indicates he knows Peter may be inclined not to go (not stated but only implied). But (ἀλλά) the Spirit tells him to go anyway.
3. δέ ("and" or "but")
   a. δέ is often used in the same way as καί to coordinate two or more items.
      In Matthew 1:2, δέ joins two sentences (underlined).

Ἀβραὰμ	ἐγέννησεν	τὸν Ἰσαάκ,	Ἰσαὰκ	**δὲ**	ἐγέννησεν	τὸν Ἰακώβ.
Abraham	gave birth to	Isaac	Isaac	**and**	gave birth	to Jacob.

b. In the Matthew 1:2 passage in 3,a and Matthew 8:20 in 3,c, note that δέ comes after the first word of the second sentence. This is always true of δέ. It never is the first word of the sentence. It always follows the first word in the sentence. This happens even though it is joining the two sentences to each other, and so we might expect it to appear between the two sentences.

c. δέ is also used very often in the same way as ἀλλά to contrast items.

In Matthew 8:20, δέ contrasts two facts (underlined).

ἀλώθεκες	φωλεοὺς	ἔχουσιν	ὁ δὲ υἱὸς	τοῦ ἀνθρώπου	οὐκ ἔχει
Foxes	holes	have	**but** the Son	of Man	doesn't have

ποῦ	τὴν κεφαλὴν	κλίνῃ.
where	his head	to rest.

d. How does one tell whether δέ is coordinating or contrasting? The only way to decide this is to consider which of the two fits best in the context.

e. If the clause preceding a δέ clause begins with μέν, then the two clauses are contrasted with the thought expressed like this: "On the one hand..., and on the other hand…"

Romans 14:2

ὃς	μὲν	πιστεύει	φαγεῖν	πάντα,
A person	**on the one hand**	has faith	to eat	everything,

ὁ δὲ	ἀσθενῶν	ἐσθίει	λάχανα.
on the other hand	the one who is weak	eats	(only) vegetables.

4. οὖν ("therefore")

a. Like δέ, οὖν always comes after the first word of a sentence.

b. οὖν joins two thoughts in this way: The thought that follows is a conclusion based on what was said earlier. (Or, to say the same thing another way, what was said earlier is the cause of what follows οὖν).

Romans 5:1

δικαιωθέντες οὖν	ἐκ	πίστεως	εἰρήνην	πρὸς	τὸν θεον.
Therefore, since we are acquitted	by	faith	peace	we have toward	God.

N.B. The clause "since we are acquitted by faith" summarizes what Paul had said in the previous verses. Then Paul uses οὖν to introduce a conclusion that is based on what he had said previously.

5. ἤ ("or")

a. ἤ joins two words or phrases by indicating they are opposites.

Matthew 5:36

οὐ δύνασαι	ποιῆσαι	μίαν	τρίχα	λευκὴν	ἢ	μέλαιναν.
You aren't able	to make	one	hair	white	**or**	black.

b. ἤ also joins two words or phrases by indicating they are alternatives.

Matthew 5:17

Μὴ νομίσητε	ὅτι	ἦλθον	καταλῦσαι	τὸν νόμον	ἢ	τοὺς προφήτας.
Don't think	that	I came	to destroy	the law	**or**	the prophets.

6. ὥς, οὕτως, κάθως (“in the same way as”)

a. These conjunctions join two words or clauses by indicating that they are similar in some way.

Ephesians 4:32

χαριζόμενοι	ἑαυτοῖς	**καθὼς**	ὁ θεὸς	ἐχαρίσατο	ὑμῖν.
Forgive	each other	**in the same way as**	God	forgave	you.

The Importance of Conjunctions in Interpreting the New Testament

The vast majority of sentences in the New Testament begin with a conjunction. Conjunctions are used again and again to join parts of a sentence to one another. Conjunctions are even used to join paragraphs and whole chapters.

Conjunctions indicate how thoughts relate to one another. One dare not interpret any paragraph, or sentence, or part of a sentence in the New Testament without taking note of how the inspired writers connected one thought to another. For example, if a writer indicates that what he says in one clause is the cause of what God or some biblical person did, and that what he says in another clause is the effect, the interpreter dare not miss this connection. All too often, ignoring a conjunction has led to a misunderstanding of Scripture or to a false doctrine.

This reminder is in place: Conjunctions are just as important in interpreting the New Testament as noun and verb forms are. Conjunctions must not be overlooked or misunderstood. A good interpreter of the New Testament will pay close attention to each and every conjunction used by the inspired writers in order to interpret Scripture properly.

C. Vocabulary

καί, τέ	and	ἤ	or
ἀλλά	but	οὖν, ἄρα, διό	therefore
δέ	and, but	τὸ ἱμάτιον, -ου	garment
οὐδε, μηδέ	and not, but not	ἡ συναγωγή, -ῆς	synagogue

Exercises - Lesson 37

A. Translation and Syntax with the Focus on Coordinating Conjunctions

- Translate each sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about words in the sentence.

1.
ὁ πατὴρ καὶ ἡ μήτηρ ᾽Ιησοῦ ἐζήτουν αὐτὸν

ἐν τῇ πόλει ὅλῃ τῷ ἱερῷ τε.

a. Which two words does καί join together?

b. What tense is ἐζήτουν? What kind of action does this tense indicate? Explain.

c. What case is πόλει and ἱερῷ? Why are they this case?

d. What does the adjective ὅλῃ modify? How do you know this?

e. What two words are joined by τε?

f. What case is αὐτὸν? Why is it this case?

- To whom does αὐτὸν refer? How do you know this?

2.
ἡμάρτηκα. χαίρω οὖν ἐν δικαιοσύνῃ Χριστοῦ

ἣ ἐστὶ μοί τῇ πιστεί.

a. ἡμάρτηκα is perfect tense (completed action, ongoing result). What is the completed action?

- What is the ongoing result?

b. What does οὖν indicate about the sentence it begins (second position)? Explain.

c. What tense is χαίρω? What kind of action does this tense indicate? Explain.

d. Χριστοῦ is best understood as a subjective genitive. Explain.

e. What kind of word is ἢ?

- What case is it? Why is it this case?

- What number and gender is it? Why is it this number and gender?

f. The dative μοί with the linking verb ἐστὶ indicates possession. Explain.

g. What kind of dative is τῇ πιστεί? Explain.

- There is no word in the sentence that indicates why τῇ πιστεί is specific. However, the context shows what specific faith is meant. Explain.

h. What word makes δικαιοσύνῃ specific?

- The article is not used with δικαιοσύνη even though it is specific. What does the lack of the article stress? Explain.

3.
οὐ ἤτησαν ἐδόθησαν οὐδὲ ἐξουσίαν ἱστῆναι

πρὸ τοῖς οἰκοῖς ἱερέων ἢ τῇ συναγωγῇ.

a. What two words does οὐδὲ join together?

b. What case is ἐξουσίαν? Why is it this case?

c. What tense is ἤτησαν and ἐδόθησαν? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

d. ἱστῆναι is a complementary infinitive used with ἐξουσίαν. Explain.

e. What words are joined by ἢ?

- In what way does ἢ join these words?

f. What case is τοῖς οἰκοῖς? Why is it this case?

- Why does οἰκοῖς have an article? Explain.

g. What case is ἱερῶν? Why is it this case?

h. What case is τῇ συναγωγῇ? Why is it this case?

i. What voice is ἐδόθησαν? Explain what this means.

4.
δεχόμεθα χάριν καὶ δικαιοσύνην καὶ ζωὴν καὶ χάραν ἀπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ.

a. What tense and voice is δεχόμεθα?

b. What words are joined by καὶ?

- What case are these words? Why are they this case?

- How does the prepositional phrase ἀπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ make these words specific?

- Since they are specific but don't have an article, what is being stressed about them? Explain.

B. Memory Work

- Keep on reviewing the vocables learned in previous lessons.
- Make out vocable cards for the words in the vocabulary of this lesson.

Lesson Thirty-Eight

Unit I. Conjunctions

Lesson 37 Coordinating
Lesson 38 Subordinating
Lesson 39 Καί and γάρ Explanatory

A. Subordinating Conjunctions

1. In Lesson 38 we looked only at conjunctions that join two equal things. Since these conjunctions join two equal things, we call them coordinating conjunctions.
2. A conjunction can also join two unequal things such as an independent clause (a clause that expresses a complete thought) and a dependent clause (a clause that by itself does not express a complete thought). We will look at this kind of conjunction in this lesson.
3. We call a conjunction that joins a dependent clause to an independent clause a subordinating conjunction. To "subordinate" means to place under (*sub*) in importance or rank (*ordo*).
4. A subordinating conjunction, then, is the word at the beginning of a dependent clause (cf. #2 above), indicating that this clause is of lesser/secondary importance in a sentence.
5. A dependent clause that begins with a subordinating conjunction is often an adverbial clause that modifies the main verb in the sentence, or a noun clause that is the object of the main verb in the sentence.

B. The Subordinating Conjunctions Used Most Often in the New Testament

1. ὅτε ("when")
   a. ὅτε introduces an adverbial subordinate clause that indicates the time when the action of the verb that it modifies takes place.

Luke 23:33

ὅτε	ἦλθον	ἐπὶ	τὸν τόπον	ἐκεῖ	ἐσταύρωσαν	αὐτὸν.
When	they came	to	the place	there	they crucified	him.

2. γάρ (“because”)

a. γάρ introduces an adverbial clause that indicates the reason why (the cause) the action of the verb that it modifies takes place.

Matthew 1:21

καλέσεις	τὸ ὄνομα αὐτοῦ	Ἰησοῦν	**γάρ**	αὐτὸς	σώσει
You will call	his name	Jesus,	**because**	he	will save

τὸν λαὸν αὐτοῦ	ἀπὸ	τῶν ἁμαρτιῶν αὐτῶν.	
his people	from	their sins.	

3. ὅτι (“because” or “that”)

a. ὅτι introduces an adverbial clause that indicates the reason why (the cause) the action of the verb that it modifies takes place (cf. also γάρ, #2 above).

Luke 19:21

ἐφοβούμην	σε,	**ὅτι**	ἄνθρωπος	αὐστηρὸς	εἶ.
I was afraid of	you,	**because**	a man	strict	you are.

b. After a verb of perception (to say, think, hear, etc.), ὅτι introduces a clause that gives the content of what was said, thought, heard, etc.

Matthew 4:12

Ἀκούσας	**ὅτι**	Ἰωάννης	παρεδόθη,	ἀνεχώρησεν	εἰς	τὴν Γαλιλαίαν.
When he heard	**that**	John	was imprisoned,	he went away	to	Galilee.

4. ἵνα (“that” or “in order that”)

a. After a verb of perception (to say, think, hear, etc.), ἵνα introduces a noun clause that gives the content of what was said, thought, heard, etc.

Mark 3:9

εἶπεν	τοῖς μαθηταῖς αὐτοῦ	**ἵνα**	προσκαρτερῇ	πλοιάριον	αὐτῷ.
He told	his disciples	**that**	they should get	a boat	for him.

b. ἵνα also can introduce an adverbial clause that gives the goal or purpose (“in order that”) of the action of the verb it modifies. The verb in the ἵνα clause will be subjunctive mood because the clause states a goal, not a fact.

Galatians 4:4,5

ὁ θεὸς	ἐξαπέστειλεν	τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ...	**ἵνα**	ἐξαγοράσῃ
God	sent out	his Son…	**in order that**	he would ransom

τοὺς	ὑπὸ	νόμον.
those	under	the law.

5. ὅπως (“in order that”)
   a. ὅπως introduces an adverbial clause that gives the goal or purpose of the action of the verb that it modifies.
      Matthew 2:23

κατῴκησεν	εἰς	Ναζαρέτ	**ὅπως**	τὸ ῥηθὲν
He lived	in	Nazareth	**in order that**	what was said

διὰ	τῶν προφητῶν	πληρωθῇ.
through	the prophets	would be fulfilled.

6. ὥστε (“so that”)
   a. ὥστε introduces an adverbial clause that gives the result of the action of the verb that it modifies (often followed by an accusative with an infinitive).
      John 3:16

ὁ θεὸς	ἠγάπησεν	τὸν κόσμον,	**ὥστε**	ἔδωκεν	τὸν υἱὸν	τὸν μονογενῆ.
God	loved	the world,	**so that**	he gave	his Son	the one and only.

7. ὅπου (“where”)
   a. ὅπου introduces an adverbial clause that indicates where the action of the verb that it modifies takes place.
      Matthew 26:57

ἀπήγαγον	Ἰησοῦν	πρὸς	Καϊάφαν,	**ὅπου**	οἱ γραμματεῖς	συνήχθησαν.
They led	Jesus	to	Caiaphas,	**where**	the scribes	were gathered.

8. ἕως (“until”)
   a. ἕως introduces an adverbial clause that indicates when the action of the verb that it modifies came to an end.
      John 21:22

Ἐὰν	θέλω	αὐτὸν	μένειν	**ἕως**	ἔρχομαι,	τί	πρὸς	σέ;
If	I want	him	to remain	**until**	I come	what [is that]	to	you?

C. Vocabulary

ὅτε	when	γάρ	because
ὅτι	because, that	ἵνα	that, in order that
ὅπως	in order that	ὥστε	so that
ὅπου	where	ἕως	until

Exercises - Lesson 38

A. Translation and Syntax with the Focus on Subordinating Conjunctions

- Translate each sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in the sentence.

1.
ὁ πατὴρ ἐμοὶ ἔπεμψε με εἰς συναγωγὴν ἵνα

εὕρω τοὺ διδάσκαλον τοῦ λόγου θεοῦ.

a. What word is the main verb in this sentence?

b. How does the subordinate clause beginning with ἵνα modify the main verb? Explain.

c. What mood is the verb εὕρω? Why is it this mood?

d. What kind of genitive is τοῦ λόγου? Explain.

2.
ἡ γύνη οὐκ πιστεύει τῷ ἱερεὶ γὰρ οὐκ ἐτίθου ἄρτον ἐν τῷ ἱέρῷ.

a. What word is the main verb in the sentence?

b. How does the subordinate clause beginning with γάρ modify the main verb? Explain.

c. What tense is ἐτίθου? What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

- Who is the subject of the verb ἐτίθου?

3.
ὅτε ὁ κύριος ἔρχεται ἐν δόξῃ πάντες ἄνθρωποι στήσουσι πρὸ τῷ θρόνῳ αὐτοῦ.

a. What word is the main verb in the sentence?

b. How does the subordinate clause beginning with ὅτε modify the main verb? Explain.

B. Translating Bible Passages

- Translate the underlined words of the passage. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each verb.
- Write "prep" (preposition) or "conj" (conjunction) above words where these labels apply.
- Answer the question(s) about each passage.

1. Mark 2:12

(Remember ὥστε is often followed by an accusative and infinitive construction, cf. Lesson 38,B,6)

ἠγέρθη καὶ ἐξῆλθεν πρὸ πάντων, ὥστε πάντας ἐξίστασθαι
He got up

καὶ δοξάζειν τὸν θεὸν.

a. Which word(s) are the main verb in this passage?

b. How does the subordinate clause beginning with ὥστε modify the main verb? Explain.

c. Explain the different kinds of action indicated by the two infinitives in the ὥστε clause.

2. Matthew 28:6

οὐκ ἔστιν ὧδε, ἠγέρθη γὰρ καθὼς εἶπεν.
here. He rose

δεῦτε ἴδετε τὸν τόπον ὅπου ἔκειτο.
Come, he lay.

a. How does the subordinate clause beginning with γάρ modify οὐκ ἔστιν ὧδε? Explain.

b. What verb does the subordinate clause beginning with ὅπου modify?

- How does it modify this verb? Explain.

c. What mood is the verb ἴδετε? Explain.

C. Memory Work

- Make out vocable cards for the words listed in the vocabulary for this lesson.

Lesson Thirty-Nine

Unit I. Conjunctions

Lesson 37 Coordinating
Lesson 38 Subordinating
Lesson 39 Καί and γάρ Explanatory

A. A Second Important Use of καί and γάρ.

1. Καί and γάρ are two of the most frequently used conjunctions in the New Testament.
2. Both are used with two different meanings.
3. The New Testament student needs to be continually aware of both uses of each of these two conjunctions and to be able to interpret these uses correctly.
4. This special chapter is devoted to these two conjunctions in order to stress the importance of these two conjunctions in New Testament interpretation.

B. Explanatory καί

1. In Lesson 38 (B,1), we saw that καί serves as a coordinating conjunction (a conjunction that joins two equal things = words, phrases, clauses, sentences).
2. However, καί can also introduce a word, phrase, clause or sentence that explains the previous word, phrase, clause, or sentence.
3. This use of καί is referred to as epexegetical or explanatory.
4. Here are a couple biblical examples of an explanatory καί:
   a. Romans 1:5

δι᾽	οὗ	ἐλάβομεν	χάριν	**καὶ**	ἀποστολὴν.
Through	whom	we received	the undeserved gift	**namely**	the apostleship.

N.B. Paul is not talking about receiving two things, but one thing that is explained by the word after καὶ.

   b. Matthew 8:33

ἀπήγγειλαν	πάντα	**καὶ**	τὰ
They reported	everything	**namely**	the things [that happened]

τῶν δαιμονιζομένων.
to those possessed with demons.

N.B. Matthew explains what is meant by παντα with the words after καὶ.

5. How does one tell the difference between a coordinating and an explanatory καί?
   a. The coordinating καί joins two different but equal things.
   b. The explanatory καί joins two similar things that are closely related to each other.
   N.B. Καί also has a third use, namely, as an adverb meaning "also, even." In this usage καί puts special emphasis on the word immediately following:

Galatians 5:1

καὶ	μὴ	πάλιν	ἐνέχεσθε	ζυγῷ	δουλείας.
Certainly	don't	again	be entangled	with a yoke	of slavery.

N.B. Paul emphasizes that the Galatians should not let the same thing happen to them all over again.

C. Explanatory γάρ

1. In lesson 39 (B,2) we saw that γάρ is a subordinating conjunction that has a causal meaning (the clause it introduces gives the cause of the action that precedes, or the reason why the preceding is true).
2. However, γάρ can also introduce a clause that explains a word or phrase or clause that precedes it.
3. This use of γάρ is called epexegetical or explanatory.
4. An explanatory γάρ can be translated in a number of ways: "indeed, yes, you see, for example."
5. Here is a Bible passage that is an example of an explanatory γάρ:

Galatians 2:21

οὐκ ἀθετῶ	τὴν χάριν	τοῦ θεοῦ	γὰρ	εἰ	δικαιοσύνη	διὰ	νόμου,
I do not set aside	the grace	of God.	You see,	if	acquittal [were]	by	the law,

ἄρα	Χριστὸς	ἀπέθανεν	δωρεὰν.
then	Christ	died	for nothing.

N.B. Paul explains that he would be rejecting God's grace if he sought to be acquitted by doing the law.

D. Vocabulary

- Add the explanatory meanings of καί and γάρ to the vocable cards that you made for these two words earlier.

και	namely, that is	γάρ	indeed, yes, you see, for example
ἤδη	now, already	ὥδε	here
ὅυ	where	ἡ ἀρχη, -ῆς	beginning
ἡ χάρα, -ᾶς	joy	τὸ παιδίον, -ου	child, infant
ἡ ἐπαγγελία, -α	promise		

to be, to exist ὑπάρχω (imperfect = ὑπῆρχον)

Exercises – Lesson 39

A. Translation and Syntax

- Translate each sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in each sentence.

1.

ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ ἡ γυνὴ ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ ᾔτησαν θεὸν δοῦναι αὐτοῖς

υἱὸν καὶ παιδίον ἑαυτῶν

a. The articles with ἀνὴρ and γυνὴ indicate a specific man and woman are meant. What words in the context identify which specific man and woman they are? Explain.

b. What kind of καὶ is the καὶ between ἀνὴρ and γυνὴ? (coordinate or explanatory?)

- How do you know which of the two it is?

c. What tense is ᾔτησαν? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

d. What kind of infinitive is δοῦναι? Explain.

e. What kind of καὶ is the καὶ between υἱὸν and παιδίον?

- How do you know which of the two it is?

2.

ὁ προφήτης ἀπεκτάνθη γὰρ ἠτιμάζε θεὸν

γὰρ οὐ ἐδιδάσκεν τὸν λόγον θεοῦ.

a. What voice is ἀπεκτάνθη? Explain.

b. What tense are ἠτιμάζε and ἐδιδάσκεν? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

c. γὰρ ἠτιμάζε is a causal clause modifying ἀπεκτάνθη. Explain.

d. γὰρ οὐ ἐδιδάσκεν τὸν λόγον θεοῦ is an explanatory clause modifying ἠτιμάζε. Explain.

B. Translating a Bible Passage

- Translate the underlined words of the passage. Put the translation under each word.
- Write the tense above each verb.
- Write "prep" (preposition) or "conj" (conjunction) above words where these labels apply.
- Answer the questions about the passage.

1. Acts 8:6-7

προσεῖχον — τοῖς λεγομένοις — ὑπὸ — Φιλίππου
They paid close attention to — Philip

ἐν τῷ — αὐτοὺς — βλέπειν — τὰ σημεῖα — ἃ — ἐποίει
the miracles

γὰρ — πολλοὶ — χωλοὶ — ἐθεραπεύθησαν.
crippled people

a. What kind of participle is τοῖς λεγομένοις? How do you know this?

- What voice is λεγομένοις? Explain.

b. Explain the meaning of the phrase ἐν τῷ αὐτοὺς βλέπειν (preposition + article + accusative + infinitive, cf. Lesson 12).

- What verb does this phrase modify? Explain.

c. What word(s) does the relative clause ἃ ἐποίει modify? How do you know this?

d. What kind of action does the tense of ἐποίει indicate?

e. What is the relationship between the words τὰ σημεῖα ἃ ἐποίει and πολλοὶ χωλοὶ ἐθεραπεύθησαν?

- What kind of γάρ is the γάρ, then, that introduces the words πολλοὶ χωλοὶ ἐθεραπεύθησαν?

f. What kind of action does the tense of ἐθεραπεύθησαν indicate?

- What voice is ἐθεραπεύθησαν? Explain.

C. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing all the vocables you learned in the previous lessons.
2. Begin to make two separate groups of vocable cards.
    a. Put those you know well already in one group. Review them once a week.
    b. Put those you are still having trouble remembering in another group. Review them every day.
3. Put the words from the vocabulary of this lesson on vocable cards.

Lesson Forty

Unit J. Conditional Sentences

Lesson 40 Simple Conditionals
Lesson 41 Present General Conditionals and Future More Vivid Conditionals
Lesson 42 Contrary to Fact Conditionals

A. Conditional Sentences

1. A conditional sentence has two main parts.
   a. One part begins with the word "if." We call this part the protasis.
   b. The other part is the "then" part. We call this part the apodosis.
2. There are three kinds of relationships that the if and then parts of a conditional sentence can have to one another.
   a. A cause will be given in the if part, and effect is stated in the then part.
      e.g. "If you have an illness, then you will not feel well."
   b. The if and then parts can be equal to one another.
      e.g. "If you have an illness, then your body is not healthy."
   c. The then part will draw a conclusion based on the if part.
      e.g. "You can't go to the meeting if you have an illness."
3. In this unit we will look at four different kinds of conditional sentences that occur in the New Testament. We will start with simple conditional sentences.

B. Simple Conditional Sentences

1. In Greek, simple conditional sentences have εἰ and the indicative mood in the "if" part of the sentence, and usually the indicative mood in the "then" part of the sentence.
2. The "if" part of a simple conditional sentence presents something as a possible fact.
3. The "then" part of the simple conditional sentence states what is also a fact if the "if" part of the sentence is a fact.
4. Here are a couple Bible passages as examples:

   Luke 19:8

εἴ	ἐσυκοφάντησα	τινός	τι	ἀποδίδωμι	τετραπλοῦν.
If	I have cheated	anyone	in anyway	I will pay back	four times as much.

   Galatians 5:18

εἰ	πνεύματι	ἄγεσθε,	οὐκ ἐστὲ	ὑπὸ	νόμον.
If	by the Spirit	you are led,	you are not	subject to	the law.

C. Vocabulary

ἡ γλῶσσα, -ης	tongue, language	ἡ γραφη, -ῆς	writing, Scripture
ἡ παραβολή, -ῆς	simile, parable	εἷς, μία, ἕν	one
εἰ	if	τότε	then
οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν	no one, nothing	ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅτι	whoever, whatever
μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν	no one, nothing		

Exercises - Lesson 40

A. Translation and Syntax

- Translate the sentence. Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about each sentence.

1.

εἰ τίθης τὸν ἄρτον ἐπὶ λίθῳ πρὸ οἰκίᾳ

τὰ τέκνα ἡμῶν εὑρήσουσι αὐτόν.

a. How do you know that this is a simple conditional sentence? (cf. B,1)

b. Underline the "then" part (apodosis) of this conditional sentence.

c. What word do the prepositional phrases ἐπὶ λίθῳ and πρὸ οἰκίᾳ modify?

d. How do these prepositional phrases modify this word?

e. What kind of pronoun/adjective is ἡμῶν? Explain.

f. What word does the pronoun αὐτόν refer to? How do you know this?

B. Translating a Bible Passage

- Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about the words in this passage.

1. Acts 5:39

οὐ δυνήσεσθε λῦσαι αὐτούς εἰ τοῦτο ἐκ θεοῦ ἐστιν.

a. Underline the "if" part (protasis) of this simple conditional sentence.

b. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is the verb δυνήσεσθε?

c. What tense is the infinitive λῦσαι?

d. What kind of infinitive is λῦσαι?

C. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocable cards of those words you don't know well yet.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words of the vocabulary in this lesson.

Lesson Forty-One

Unit J. Conditional Sentences

Lesson 40 Simple Conditionals
Lesson 41 Present General Conditionals and Future More Vivid Conditionals
Lesson 42 Contrary to Fact Conditionals

A. The Form of Present General and Future More Vivid Conditional Sentences.

1. We have put both of these conditional sentences in one lesson because the "if" part of both conditionals begin with ἐάν (instead of εἰ as in the simple conditionals).
2. Both of these conditional sentences also have a verb in the subjunctive mood in the protasis (the "if" part of the sentence).
3. Where these two conditional sentences are different is in the apodosis (the "then" part of the sentence).
   a. The present general conditional sentence will have a present tense in the apodosis.
   b. The future more vivid will have a future tense, or a verb with future idea such as an imperative, in the apodosis.
4. A chart of the three conditionals we have mentioned would look like this:

Conditional	Protasis	Apodosis
Simple	εἰ + indicative	indicative
Present General	ἐάν + subjunctive	present tense
Future More Vivid	ἐάν + subjunctive	future tense

B. The Meaning of Present General Conditional Sentences.

1. The name given to this kind of conditional helps you remember what it means.
2. The word "general" tells you that the writer or speaker does not have a specific event in mind in the "if" and "then" parts of the sentence.
3. Instead this condition has a more general meaning: Every time the "if" part of the sentence happens (and it may happen often), the "then" part of the sentence also happens every time (present tense in apodosis = continual action).

   1 John 1:9

ἐὰν	ὁμολογῶμεν	τὰς ἁμαρτίας ἡμῶν,	πιστός	ἐστιν	καὶ	δίκαιος,
If	we confess	our sins	faithful	he is	and	just,

ἵνα	ἀφῇ	ἡμῖν.
to	forgive	us.

N.B. The translation on the line above is a literal translation. A better translation would be as follows. "Every time we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us (every time)."

C. The meaning of the Future More Vivid Conditional Sentences

1. The name given to this kind of conditional also helps you remember what it means.
2. The word "vivid" tells you that usually the writer or speaker has a particular vivid (i.e. a strong, lively, clear) event in mind in the protasis.
3. If this thing that is vividly in the mind of the writer or speaker happens, then the writer or speaker is certain that the "then" part of the sentence will also happen (future tense).

Mark 5:28

ἐὰν	ἅψωμαι	κἂν	τῶν ἱματίων αὐτοῦ	σωθήσομαι.
If	I touch	only	his garments	I will be healed.

N.B. The woman has one vivid idea in mind – to touch Jesus' garment. Then she is sure she will be healed.

D. Vocabulary

ἐάν	if	τὸ σάββατον, -ου	Sabbath
ἐμός, ἐμή, ἐμόν	my, mine	ἡ ἐντολή, -ῆς	command
δώδεκα	twelve	τρεῖς, τρία	three

Exercises - Lesson 41

A. Translation and Syntax

- Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about each sentence.

1.

ἐὰν	διδάσκῃς	τὸν λόγον	δοθέντα	ἡμῖν	τῷ θεῷ,	σώσεις

πολλοὺς ἀνθρώπους.

a. What kind of conditional sentence is this? What words in the protasis and apodosis tell you this?

b. Explain what the speaker or writer is emphasizing, then, by the words of this sentence.

c. What tense, voice, mood, person and number is διδάσκῃς?

d. What form of the verb δίδωμι is the word δοθέντα (state the tense and voice also)?

e. What kind of dative is ἡμῖν? Explain.

f. What kind of dative is τῷ θεῷ? Explain.

g. What tense, voice, mood, person and number is σώσεις?

2.
ἐὰν ὁ βασιλεὺς κελεύῃ τοὺς διακόνους αὐτοῦ

ἐνεγκεῖν αὐτῷ καρπὸν, ποιοῦσι οὕτως.

a. What kind of conditional sentence is this? What words in the protasis and apodosis tell you this?

b. Explain what the speaker or writer is emphasizing, then, by the words of this sentence.

c. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is κελεύῃ?

d. What form of the verb φέρω is the word ἐνεγκεῖν (state the tense and voice also)?

e. What kind of dative is αὐτῷ? Explain.

f. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is ποιοῦσι?

B. Translating Bible Passages

- Put the translation under each underlined word.
- Answer the questions about each passage.

1. Matthew 4:9

Ταῦτά σοι πάντα δώσω, ἐὰν πεσὼν προσκυνήσῃς μοι.

a. What kind of conditional sentence is this? What words in the protasis and apodosis tell you this?

b. What is the devil telling Jesus by the use of this kind of conditional?

c. What tense, voice, mood, person and number is δώσω?

d. What does the word πάντα emphasize? Explain.

e. What tense, voice, mood, person and number is προσκυνήσῃς?

f. What form of the verb πίπτω is the word πεσὼν (state the tense and voice also)?

g. πεσὼν is a temporal adverbial participle. What word does it modify, therefore?

h. What kind of temporal participle is this because of its tense? What would a literal translation be, therefore?

2. John 5:31

ἐὰν μαρτυρῶ περὶ ἐμαυτοῦ, ἡ μαρτυρία μου οὐκ ἔστιν ἀληθής.
my witness

a. What kind of conditional sentence is this? What words in the protasis and apodosis tell you this?

b. What is Jesus saying with this kind of conditional sentence, then? Explain.

c. What tense, voice, mood, person and number is μαρτυρῶ?

d. What kind of pronoun is ἐμαυτοῦ? Explain.

e. What tense, voice, mood, person and number is ἔστιν?

f. What word does the adjective ἀληθής modify?

C. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocable cards of those words that you don't know well yet.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words listed in the vocabulary of this lesson.

Lesson Forty-Two

Unit J. Conditional Sentences

Lesson 40 Simple Conditionals
Lesson 41 Present General Conditionals and Future More Vivid Conditionals
Lesson 42 Contrary to Fact Conditionals

A. The Form of Contrary to Fact Conditional Sentences

1. A contrary to fact conditional sentence will have εἰ and the indicative, either imperfect or aorist tense, in the "if" part (protasis) of the sentence.
2. It will have the particle ἄν and the indicative, either imperfect or aorist tense, in the "then" part (apodosis) of the sentence.
3. Adding this conditional to the three listed on the chart in lesson 41, the four main conditional sentences in Greek are formed like this:

Conditional	Protasis	Apodosis
Simple	εἰ + indicative	indicative
Present General	ἐάν + subjunctive	**present** tense
Future More Vivid	ἐάν + subjunctive	**future** tense
Contrary to Fact	εἰ + impf/aor indicative	ἄν + impf/aor indicative

N.B. If you remember only the words in bold type in this chart, you have the keys to all four conditionals.

B. The Meaning of Contrary to Fact Conditional Sentences

1. The protasis ("if" part of the sentence) states something that is not true.
2. The apodosis ("then" part of the sentence) states something that is not true as result of the protasis not being true.
3. An example in English would be:
   If it had rained (which hasn't happened), the ground would be wet (which it isn't).
4. Why would a person make a statement like this? Most likely to show how foolish it is for a person to assume that the "if" part of the sentence is true. In this case someone must be arguing that it had rained. This contrary to fact conditional shows how foolish it is to say that it rained.
5. Above in A,1 and A,2 we said the tense in the protasis and apodosis can be either of two tenses.
   a. If the imperfect tense is used in both the protasis and the apodosis, the sentence refers to something that is not true in the present time (Cf. Exercises B,1).
   b. If the aorist tense is used in both the protasis and the apodosis, the sentence refers to something that was not true in past time (Cf. Exercises B,2).

C. Vocabulary

ἔξω	outside	τὸ ὄρος, ὄρου	hill, mountain

ἄν — In the apodosis of a conditional sentence, it indicates that the condition is contrary to fact.

In a temporal or relative clause, it makes the clause indefinite, that is, an indefinite time or person. E.g.:

ὅς ἄν	whoever
ὅτε ἄν	whenever

Exercises - Lesson 42

A. Translation and Syntax

- Put the translation under the words of each sentence.
- Answer the questions about each sentence.

1.

εἰ ὁ προφήτης ἐλάλησε τὴν ἀλήθειαν, ὁ λαὸς οὐκ ἄν ἀπώλεσαν.

a. What one word in the apodosis tells you this is a contrary to fact conditional?

b. What tense are both ἐλάλησε and ἀπώλεσαν? What does this tell you about this contrary to fact conditional sentence? Explain.

2.

εἰ Ἰησοῦς ἦν σὺν ἡμῖν νῦν, ἡμεῖς ἡσθάζομεν

αὐτὸν ὡς τὸν βασιλέα ἡμῶν.

a. What one word in the apodosis tells you this is a contrary to fact conditional?

b. What tense are both ἦν and ἡσπάζομεν? What does this tell you about this contrary to fact conditional sentence? Explain.

c. What word does the phrase σὺν ἡμῖν modify? Explain.

d. What kind of word is ἡμῶν since it is used to modify a noun? Explain.

e. Explain the gender and number of the pronoun αὐτὸν.

f. Explain the case of αὐτὸν.

B. Translating Bible Passages

- Put the translation of each underlined word under that word.
- Answer the questions about each passage.

1. John 9:41

Εἰ τυφλοὶ ἦτε, οὐκ ἂν εἴχετε ἁμαρτίαν. νῦν δὲ λέγετε Βλέπομεν.
blind

ἡ ἁμαρτία ὑμῶν μένει.

a. What one word in the apodosis tells you this is a contrary to fact conditional sentence?

b. What tense is ἦτε and εἴχετε? What does this tell you about this conditional?

c. What does the νῦν δὲ at the beginning of the next sentence indicate?

d. What word shows why Jesus uses the article ἡ to make ἁμαρτία specific? Explain.

2. 1 Corinthians 2:8

Εἰ ἔγνωσαν, οὐκ ἂν τὸν κύριον τῆς δόξης ἐσταύρωσαν.

a. What one word in the apodosis tells you this is a contrary to fact conditional sentence?

b. What tense is ἔγνωσαν and ἐσταύρωσαν? What does this tell you about this conditional?

c. What kind of genitive is τῆς δόξης? Explain.

d. Explain what the article with δόξης indicates.

C. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing the vocable cards of those words that you don't know well yet.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words listed in the vocabulary of this lesson.

Lesson Forty-Three

Unit K. Verbs: Incidentals

Lesson 43 Second Aorist, Pluperfect
Lesson 44 Liquid and Nasal Verbs
Lesson 45 Οὐ and μή in Questions, Periphrastics
Lesson 46 Genitive Absolute, Indirect Discourse

A. Verbs with Second Aorist Forms

1. Some Greek verbs have an aorist form that does not follow the usual pattern for the aorist tense.
2. We refer to the aorist forms of these verbs as "second aorist" forms.
3. Instead of the typical aorist form with the letters σα before the aorist endings, second aorist forms have the same endings as the imperfect tense.
   e.g. The imperfect of λαμβάνω is ἐλάμβανον, the aorist is ἔλαβον.
4. So that the aorist and imperfect tenses are not exactly the same, the second aorist forms have a different root.
   e.g. The root of the imperfect tense of λαμβάνω is λαμβαν, the aorist root is λαβ.
6. The only way you can know which verbs have a second aorist form is by memorizing the principal parts of Greek verbs.
7. You have already learned about twenty of the second aorist verbs that are used fifty or more times in the New Testament. We will list these verbs again with their second aorist forms (the aorist forms of the compound verbs are the same as the basic verb):

ἄγω	ἤγαγον	(συνάγω, ὑπάγω)
ἔρχομαι	ἦλθον	(ἀπέρχομαι, εἰσέρχομαι, ἐξέρχομαι, πρὸσερχομαι)
ἀποθνήσκω	ἀπέθανον	
βάλλω	ἔβαλον	(ἐκβάλλω)
ἐσθίω	ἔφαγον	
εὑρίσκω	εὗρον	
ἔχω	ἔσχον	
λαμβάνω	ἔλαβον	
λέγω	εἶπον	
ὁράω	εἶδον	
πάσχω	ἔπαθον	
πίνω	ἔπιον	
πίπτω	ἔπεσον	

8. As was said above in #3 above, the forms of the second aorist are like the usual imperfect forms. Here is an example using the aorist of the verb ἐσθίω:

Aorist Active Indicative	Aorist Middle/Passive Indicative
ἔφαγον	ἐφαγόμην
ἔφαγες	ἐφάγου
ἔφαγε	ἐφάγετο
ἐφάγομεν	ἐφαγόμεθα
ἐφάγετε	ἐφάγεσθε
ἔφαγον	ἐφάγοντο

B. The Pluperfect Tense

1. Earlier in Lesson 8 you learned the perfect tense of the Greek verb.
2. The perfect tense indicates completed action with a continuing result (cf. examples in Lesson 8).
3. The pluperfect tense indicates completed action with a continuing result in the past. Since the continuing result in the past cannot be expressed in English, we usually translate the pluperfect with simple past tense.

   Acts 14:23

παρέθεντο	πρεσβυτέρους	τῷ κυριῷ	εἰς	ὃν	**πεπιστεύκεισαν.**
They entrusted	the elders	to the Lord	in	whom	**they believed.**

   N.B. The completed action was that they believed. The result was they continued in faith during their lifetime.
4. The pluperfect tense is not used very often in the New Testament.
5. The pluperfect forms are formed this way:
   a. The reduplicated perfect stem may or may not be preceded by an augment.
   b. The active forms usually add κ and the letters ει before the endings.
   c. The middle/passive forms add the endings to the perfect stem.

Pluperfect Active Indicative	Pluperfect Middle/Passive Indicative
(ἐ)τεθύκειν	(ἐ)τεθύμην
(ἐ)τεθύκεις	(ἐ)τέθυσο
(ἐ)τεθύκει	(ἐ)τέθυτο
(ἐ)τεθύκειμεν	(ἐ)τεθύμεθα
(ἐ)τεθύκειτε	(ἐ)τέθυσθε
(ἐ)τεθύκεισαν	(ε)τέθυντο

C. Vocabulary

- You have learned all the vocables that occur fifty or more times in the New Testament. Now we will begin to add some words that are important in the theology of the New Testament.

ἡ ἀπολύτρωσις, -εως redemption, release (as the result of paying a ransom)

(verb = ἀπολύω)

ἡ σωτηρία, -ας salvation, rescue (from a helpless situation)

(verb = σώζω)

ἡ καλλαγη, -ῆς reconciliation (enemies become friends)

(verb = καταλλάσω)

ἡ ἁμαρτία, -ας sin (missing the bulls eye)

ἡ παράβασις, -εως sin, transgression (stepping over a line)

ἡ παρακοή, -ῆς sin, disobedience (refusing to listen)

ἡ παράπτωμα, -ατος sin, misstep (fall to the side)

Exercises - Lesson 43

A. Practice with Verb Forms

1. Identify the form of each of these verbs.
2. If a form is an aorist, indicate whether it is a regular aorist or second aorist.

	Tense	Voice	Mood	Person	Number
ἐβασιλεύσαμεν					
ἔιπε					
κεκλήκασιν					
ἐγεγράφειν					
ἐβάλετε					
βάλητε					
ἐμεμάθηκεις					
ἐπληρώθη					
πληρωθῆτε					
σεσώκατε					
σέσω[σ]ται					
σέσω[σ]το					
ἔπεμπε					
ἤγαγες					
ἠγάγεσθε					
ἐλήλυθας					

B. Translation and Syntax

- Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions on each sentence.

1.

ὁ λαὸς παραδεδώκεισαν τὸν διδάσκαλον τῷ βασιλεῖ ἀτιμάζοντα τὸν κύριον.

a. What tense, voice, person, and number is παραδεδώκεισαν?

- What kind of action is indicated by the tense of παραδεδώκεισαν? Explain.

b. What case is βασιλει? Why is it this case?

c. ἀτιμάζοντα is a causal, adverbial participle. What word does it modify, therefore? Explain.

- What tense is ἀτιμάζοντα? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

d. What case is τὸν κύριον? Why is it this case?

2.

ἡ γυνὴ ἤγαγε τὸν υἱὸν αὐτῆς εἰς οἰκίαν

ἵνα φάγῃ τὸν λοιπὸν ἄρτον.

a. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is ἤγαγε?

- What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἤγαγε?

b. What kind of word is αὐτῆς? Explain.

- Why is it genitive case?

c. What case is οἰκίαν? Why is it this case?

d. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is φάγῃ?

- Why is it the mood you indicated?

e. What case, person, and number is λοιπὸν?

- Why is it this case, person, and number?

C. Translating Bible Passages

- Put the translation under each underlined word.
- Answer the questions about each passage.

1. Luke 4:29

ἀναστάντες ἐξέβαλον αὐτὸν ἔξω τῆς πόλεως.

a. ἀναστάντες is an adverbial, preliminary participle. Explain.

- What tense is ἀναστάντες?

- What case and number is ἀναστάντες?

b. What tense is ἐξέβαλον? What kind of action is indicated by this tense?

c. What case is τῆς πόλεως? Why is it this case?

2. Luke 4:29

ἤγαγον αὐτὸν ἕως ὀφρύος τοῦ ὄρους ἐφ' οὗ ἡ πόλις ᾠκοδόμητο αὐτῶν.
to the top

a. What tense is ἤγαγον?

b. What case is τοῦ ὄρους? Why is it this case?

c. οὗ is a relative pronoun. Which word does it refer to? How do you know this?

- What case is οὗ? Why is it this case?

d. What case is ἡ πόλις? Why is it this case?

e. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is ᾠκοδόμητο?

f. What case is αὐτῶν? Why is it this case?

D. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing those vocables that you don't know well yet.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words from the vocabulary of this lesson.

Lesson Forty-Four

Unit K. Verbs: Incidentals

Lesson 43 Second Aorist, Pluperfect
Lesson 44 Liquid and Nasal Verbs
Lesson 45 Οὐ and μή in Questions, Periphrastics
Lesson 46 Genitive Absolute, Indirect Discourse

A. Verbs That Are Liquid and Nasal Verbs

1. "Liquid" verbs are verbs whose stem ends with the letters λ and ρ.
2. Such verbs are called "liquid" since when you pronounce these letters air flows around the tongue.
3. "Nasal" verbs are verbs whose stem ends with the letters μ and ν.
4. Such verbs are called "nasal" because when you pronounce these letters the sound goes through the nose.
5. In the verbs you have learned (those that occur fifty or more times in the New Testament), there are eleven liquid or nasal verbs.
6. We will list these verbs again (along with the future tense of each):

αἴρω	ἀρῶ	
ἀποκτείνω	ἀποκτενῶ	
ἀποστέλλω	ἀποστελῶ	
βάλλω	βαλῶ	(ἐκβάλλω)
ἐγείρω	ἐγερῶ	
κρίνω	κρινῶ	
μέλλω	μελλήσω	
μένω	μενῶ	
φέρω	οἴσω	
χαίρω	χαρήσομαι	

B. Unusual Forms of Liquid and Nasal Verbs

1. The future tense of a nasal verb such as κρίνω should be κρίνσω.
2. Since the νσ combination is hard to pronounce, an ε is substituted for the σ.
3. The result is κρινέω, and this form (as in contract verbs, see Lesson 35) is contracted to κρινῶ.

4. So the forms of the future tense of κρίνω would look like this:

Future Active Indicative	Future Middle Indicative
κρινῶ	κρινοῦμαι
κρινεῖς	κρινῇ
κρινεῖ	κρινεῖται
κρινοῦμεν	κρινούμεθα
κρινεῖτε	κρινεῖσθε
κρινοῦσι	κρινοῦνται

5. Liquid and nasal verbs also have unusual forms in the aorist tense.
6. The normal aorist tense has σα after the stem of the verb. Like the future tense, the result is a liquid stem ending in λ, μ, ν, or ρ followed by σα.
7. Since these combinations (λσα, μσα, νσα, ρσα) are hard to pronounce, the σ drops out and there may also be a change in the stem (e.g. the aorist of μένω = ἔμεινα, ἀποστέλλω = ἀπέστειλα).
8. The aorist active forms of κρίνω are:

ἔκρινα
ἔκρινας
ἔκρινε

ἐκρίναμεν
ἐκρίνατε
ἔκριναν

C. Vocabulary

announce	ἀγγέλλω	ἀγγελλῶ	ἠγγέλλον	ἤγγειλα	ἤγγελκα
make holy, purify	ἁγιάζω	ἁγιάσω	ἡγιάζον	ἡγίασα	-------
be unaware, ignorant of	ἀγνοέω	ἀγνοήσω	ἠγνόουν	ἠγνόησα	ἠγνόηκα
buy	ἀγοράζω	ἀγοράσω	ἠγοράζον	ἠγόρασα	ἠγόρακα
hurt, harm	ἀδικέω	ἀδικήσω	ἠδίκουν	ἠδίκησα	ἠδίκηκα
reject	ἀθετέω	ἀθετήσω	ἠθέτουν	ἠθέτησα	-------
take	αἱρέω	αἱρήσω	-------	εἷλον	-------
change	ἀλλάσσω	ἀλλάξω	ἠλλάσσον	ἤλλαξα	ἤλλαχα
reconcile	καταλλάσσω	καταλλάξω	κατήλλασον	κατήλλαξα	κατήλλαχα

Exercises - Lesson 44

A. Translation and Syntax

- Put the translation under each word in the sentence.
- Answer the questions about the words in each sentence.

1.

μενεῖτε ἐν τῇ συναγωγῇ ὅπου ὁ πατὴρ ἡμῶν ἀποστελεῖ ἄνθρωπον

ὅς ἄξει ὑμὰς εἰς τόπον εἰρήνης.

a. μενεῖτε and ἀποστελεῖ are both future tenses. How do you know they are not present tense?

- What would the form be in the present tense for each of these verbs?

b. What case is συναγωγῇ? Why is it this case?

c. What kind of word is ὅπου? Explain.

d. What kind of adjective is ἡμῶν? Explain.

e. ἄνθρωπον is indefinite since it has no article. What meaning does this give to ἄνθρωπον in this sentence, then?

f. What person and number is ὅς? Why is it this person and number?

g. What case is ὅς? Why is it this case?

h. What case is ὑμὰς? Why is it this case?

i. What kind of genitive is εἰρήνης? Explain.

2.

ἐκεῖνος ἄνθρωπος κριθήσεται τῷ βασιλεῖ ἀποκτεθήσεται καὶ τὸ σῶμα αὐτοῦ

ἐκβαλεσήσεται εἰς τὸ πῦρ.

a. What tense, voice, person and number are all of the verbs in this sentence?

b. What kind of word is ἐκεῖνος? Explain.

c. What case is βασιλεῖ? Why is it this case?

d. To what word does αὐτοῦ refer? How do you know this?

e. What case is τὸ πῦρ? Why is it this case?

B. Translating Bible Passages

- Put the translation under each underlined word.
- Answer the questions about the words in each passage.

1. John 2:19

Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν λύσατε τὸν ναὸν τοῦτον καὶ ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἐγερῶ αὐτόν.
the temple

a. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is εἶπεν?

b. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is λύσατε?

c. What kind of word is τοῦτον? Explain.

d. Is the καὶ in this sentence a coordinate or an explanatory καὶ? Explain your choice.

e. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is ἐγερῶ?

f. What kind of word is αὐτόν? Explain.

2. Luke 8:12

ἔρχεται ὁ διάβολος καὶ αἴρει τὸν λόγον ἀπὸ τῆς καρδίας αὐτῶν.
the devil

a. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is ἔρχεται?

b. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is αἴρει?

c. Is καὶ coordinate or explanatory? Explain.

d. Explain why each of these nouns is the case that it is:
- λόγον
- καρδίας
- αὐτῶν

C. Memory Work

1. Review all of your vocable cards. Put those that you don't remember in a separate group and keep reviewing those cards.
2. Make out vocable cards for the verbs in the vocabulary of this lesson.

Lesson Forty-Five

Unit K. Verbs: Incidentals

Lesson 43 Second Aorist, Pluperfect
Lesson 44 Liquid and Nasal Verbs
Lesson 45 Οὐ and μή in Questions, Periphrastics
Lesson 46 Genitive Absolute, Indirect Discourse

A. The use of οὐ and μή in Questions

1. οὐ is usually used with indicative forms of the verb; μή is usually used with every other form of the verb (subjunctive form, imperatives, infinitives, and participles).
2. οὐ and μή used together (οὐ μή) and followed by an aorist subjunctive form of the verb is the most emphatic way to deny that something will happen (Lesson 33,C,e).
3. οὐ and μή have different meanings when used in a question:
   a. When a writer or speaker uses οὐ in a question, he/she expects a "yes" answer to the question.

Mark 6:3

οὐχ	οὗτός	ἐστιν	ὁ τέκτων,	ὁ υἱὸς	τῆς	Μαρίᾳ;	
	This one	is	the carpenter,	the son	of	Mary,	**isn't he?**

   b. When a writer or speaker uses μή in a question, he/she expects a "no" answer to the question.

Luke 17:9

μὴ	ἔχει	χάριν	τῷ δούλῳ	ὅτι	ἐποίησεν	τὰ διαταχθέντα.	
	He won't	thank	his servant	because	he followed	orders,	**will he**?

B. Periphrastic Forms of the Verb

1. "Periphrasis" means to say the same thing in a slightly different way, often using more words.
2. In Greek, the usual forms of the present, imperfect, future, perfect, and pluperfect tenses can be said in another way.
3. A periphrastic form is always two words:
   a. the present or perfect participle of the verb, and
   b. a form of the verb εἰμί.
4. The following chart indicates the periphrastic forms of the verb for the five tenses:

Present tense	present participle	+	present of εἰμί
Imperfect Tense	present participle	+	imperfect of εἰμί
Future Tense	present participle	+	future of εἰμί
Perfect Tense	perfect participle	+	present of εἰμι
Pluperfect Tense	perfect participle	+	imperfect of εἰμί

5. The periphrastic forms of the verb have the same meaning as the usual forms of the verb in these tenses. When a speaker or writer uses a periphrastic form, he/she is calling special attention to the tense he/she is using. It is almost as if the speaker or writer were saying, "Be sure that you don't miss the fact that I used this tense!"

C. Vocabulary

deceive	ἀπατάω	ἀπατήσω	-------	ἠπάτησα	ἠπάτηκα
wish, desire	βούλομαι	βουλήσομαι	ἐβουλόμην	-------	-------
marry	γαμέω	γαμῶ	ἐγάμουν	ἐγάμησα	γεγάμηκα
make known	γνωρίζω	γνωρίσω	ἐγνωρίζον	ἐγνώρισα	-------
ask, beg	δέομαι	δεήσομαι	ἐδείμην	-------	δεδέημαι
tie, bind	δέω	δήσω	-------	ἔδησα	δέδεκα
serve	διακονέω	διακονήσω	διηκόνουν	διηκόνησα	-------

Exercises - Lesson 45

A. Translation and Syntax

- Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about each word.

1.

μὴ παρακαλεῖ τὸν ὄχλον φέρειν λίθους εἰς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν ἐν τῇ πόλει ;

a. What kind of answer is expected to this question? Explain.

b. What tense, voice, mood, person and number is παρακαλεῖ?

c. What kind of infinitive is φέρειν? Explain.

d. What tense is φέρειν? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

e. What case is each of these nouns? Explain why each is the case that it is.

- λίθους

- ἐκκλησίαν

- πόλει

2.
Ἰησοῦς θεραπεύων ἦν ἄνδρας καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν τῇ ὀψίᾳ.

a. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is θεραπεύων ἦν?

b. What kind of verb form is θεραπεύων ἦν? What is the significance of this form?

c. What case and number are these nouns? Why is each the case that it is?
- ἄνδρας

- γυναῖκας

- ὀψίᾳ

d. Is καὶ coordinate or explanatory? Explain.

B. Translating Bible Passages

- Put the translation under each underlined word.
- Answer the questions about each passage.

1. John 7:25

Οὐχ ἐστιν οὗτός ὃν ζητοῦσιν ἀποκτεῖναι;

a. What kind of answer is expected to this question?

b. What kind of word is οὗτός? Explain.

c. What kind of word is ὃν? Explain.

d. What gender and number is ὃν? Why is it this gender and number?

e. What case is ὃν? Why is it this case?

f. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is ζητοῦσιν?

g. What kind of verb form is ἀποκτεῖναι? Explain.

h. What tense is ἀποκτεῖναι?

2. Luke 22:69

ἔσται	ὁ υἱὸς	τοῦ ἀνθρώπου	καθήμενος	ἐκ δεξιῶν	τῆς δυνάμεως	τοῦ θεοῦ.
				at the right hand	of the power	

a. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is the verb ἔσται καθήμενος?

b. What kind of verb form is καθήμενος ἔσται? What is the significance of this form?

c. What kind of genitive is τῆς δυνάμεως? Explain.

d. Explain the article with δυνάμεως.

e. What kind of genitive is τοῦ θεοῦ? Explain.

C. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing those vocables that you don't know well yet.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words of the vocabulary in this lesson.

Lesson Forty-Six

Unit K. Verbs: Incidentals

Lesson 43 Second Aorist, Pluperfect
Lesson 44 Liquid and Nasal Verbs
Lesson 45 Οὐ and μή in Questions, Periphrastics
Lesson 46 Genitive Absolute, Indirect Discourse

A. Genitive Absolute

1. When we speak of a word or phrase being "absolute," we mean that that it is not connected grammatically to another word in the rest of the sentence.
2. An "absolute" construction that appears fairly often in the New Testament is the genitive absolute.
3. A genitive absolute is an adverbial (circumstantial) participle in the genitive case.
   a. The normal circumstantial participle has an ending that connects it with a noun such as the subject or object of the main verb in the sentence (cf. Lesson 27).
   b. However, when there is no noun in the sentence that an adverbial participle connects with, then the participle is put into the genitive case.
   c. If there is a noun or pronoun that serves as the subject of this participle, it will also be in the genitive case.

Matthew 26:47

αὐτοῦ	ἔτι	λαλοῦντος	Ἰούδας	εἷς	τῶν δώδεκα	ἦλθεν.
While he [Jesus]	**was** still	**speaking,**	Judas,	one	of the twelve,	came.

4. Like every other adverbial (circumstantial) participle, a participle in a genitive absolute tells us something important about the action in the rest of the sentence: time, cause, manner, etc. (cf. Lesson 27,B,3).

B. Indirect Discourse

1. "Direct discourse" is reporting what someone said by using a direct quote using quotation marks.
   e.g. Jesus said to the people, "I <u>am going</u> into the city."
2. Indirect discourse is reporting what someone said by stating what the person said indirectly using a clause beginning with the word "that."
   e.g. Jesus said to the people that he <u>was going</u> into the city.
3. In Greek, the conjunction ὅτι or the conjunction ἵνα is used at the beginning of the clause that states indirectly what the person said.
4. In English, a present tense verb in the direct quote may change to a past tense in the indirect quote. (cf. underlining in the examples given in #1 and #2 above.)

5. However, in Greek, the mood and tense of verb in the direct quote remains the same in the indirect quote.
   Direct quote = ἵ Ιησοῦς ἐλάλησε τῷ λαῷ, ἔρχομαι εἰς τὴν πόλιν.
   Indirect quote = ἵ Ιησοῦς ἐλάλησε τῷ λαῷ ὅτι ἔρχεται εἰς τὴν πόλιν.
6. Another way of expressing indirect discourse in Greek is to change the verb of the direct quote into an infinitive (using the same tense). In this construction, the subject of the verb in the direct quote (now the subject of the infinitive) is put in the accusative case.
   e.g. ἵ Ιησοῦς ἐλάλησε τῷ λαῷ αὐτὸν ἔρχεσθαι εἰς τὴν πόλιν.

C. Vocabulary

declare righteous, acquit	δικαιόω	δικαιώσω	ἐδικαίουν	ἐδικαίωσα	-------
pour out	ἐκχέω	ἐκχεῶ	-------	ἐξέχεα	ἐκκέχυκα
have mercy	ἐλέεω	ἐλεησω	-------	ἠλέησα	-------
accomplish	ἐργάζομαι	ἐργάσομαι	ἐργαζόμην	ἠργάσαμην	-------
be pleased	εὐδοκέω	εὐδοκήσω	εὐδοκοῦν	εὐδόκησα	-------
thank	εὐχαριστέω	εὐχαριστήσω	εὐχαριστοῦν	εὐχαρίστησα	-------
bury	θάπτω	θάψω	ἔθαπτον	ἔθαψα	-------

Exercises - Lesson 46

A. Translation and Syntax

- Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the question about each sentence.

1.
ἀσθενήσαντος τοῦ ὀφθαλμοῦ αὐτοῦ ὁ ἀνὴρ οὐ ἐδύνατο ἰδεῖν.

a. What tense, voice, case, and number is ἀσθενήσαντος?

- Explain why this participle is the case that it is.

b. What case is ὀφθαλμοῦ? Why is it this case?

- Explain how ἀσθενήσαντος τοῦ ὀφθαλμοῦ modifies the verb οὐ ἐδύνατο.

c. What case is αὐτοῦ? Why is it this case?

d. What gender and number is αὐτοῦ? Why is it this gender and number?

e. What tense is ἐδύνατο? What kind of action does this tense indicate?

f. What kind of infinitive is ἰδεῖν? Explain.

2.
ὁ προφήτης ἀποκρίνατο ὅτι θεὸς ἐπιθυμεῖ τὸν βασιλέα πιστεύειν λόγους αὐτοῦ.

a. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is ἀποκρίνατο?

b. Explain the use of the word ὅτι after the verb ἀποκρίνατο.

c. Why is the verb ἐπιθυμεῖ present tense?

d. Explain the use of the infinitive πιστεύειν with an accusative subject after ἐπιθυμεῖ.

e. What gender and number is αὐτοῦ? Why is it this gender and number?

B. Translating Bible Passages

- Put the translation under each underlined word.
- Answer the questions about each passage.

1. Acts 20:26

μαρτύρομαι	ὑμῖν	ἐν	τῇ ἡμέρᾳ	ὅτι	καθαρός	εἰμι	ἀπὸ	τοῦ αἵματος	πάντων.
					clean				

a. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is μαρτύρομαι?

b. Explain why ὑμῖν is in the dative case.

c. What word does the prepositional phrase ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ modify? Explain.

d. Explain the use of the word ὅτι after the verb μαρτύρομαι.

e. What case are these words? Why is each the case that it is?

- αἵματος

- πάντων

2. Mark 4:35

λέγει αὐτοῖς ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὀψίας γενομένης,
when evening

ἔλθωμεν εἰς τὸ πέραν.
other side

a. What word does the prepositional phrase ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ modify? Explain.

b. What kind of word is ἐκείνῃ? Explain.

c. What kind of construction is ὀψίας γενομένης? Explain.

- What word does ὀψίας γενομένης modify? Explain.

d. What kind of subjunctive is ἔλθωμεν? Explain.

- What tense is ἔλθωμεν? What meaning does this tense have here?

e. What word does the prepositional phrase εἰς τὸ πέραν modify? Explain.

C. Memory Work

1. Keep reviewing those vocables that you don't know well yet.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words in the vocabulary of this lesson and memorize them.

Lesson Forty-Seven

Unit L. Nouns: Incidentals

Lesson 47 Vocative Case, Appositives, Predicate Nominative
Lesson 48 Collective Nouns, Neuter Plural Nouns, Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

A. Vocative Case

1. The word "vocative" refers to a word someone uses in a sentence to address another person by his/her name or title.
   Revelation 22:20

Ναὶ,	ἔρχομαι	ταχύ.	Ἀμήν,	ἔρχου	**κύριε**	**Ἰησοῦ.**
Yes,	I am coming	quickly.	Amen,	come,	**Lord**	**Jesus.**

2. Sometimes the vocative case is exactly the same as the nominative case:
   a. In the first type of nouns, the vocative singular of the feminine nouns and neuter nouns is the same as the nominative singular.
      ψυχή is the nominative and vocative of ψυχή.
      τέκνον is the nominative and vocative of τέκνον.
   b. The nominative plural and vocative plural of all nouns is the same form.
      ἀδελφοί is the nominative plural and vocative plural of ἀδελφός.
3. In two instances, the nominative singular and vocative singular forms are different.
   a. In the first type of nouns, the masculine singular vocative ending is ε (epsilon).
      The vocative of κύριος is κύριε (cf. Revelation 22:20 above in A,1).
   b. In the second type of nouns, the vocative singular is the stem of the noun in the genitive case (the accent usually shifts to the first syllable and sometimes the stem vowel changes).
      The vocative of γυνή is γύναι.
      John 2:4

ὁ Ἰησοῦς	λέγει	αὐτῇ,	Τί	ἐμοὶ καὶ σοί,	**γύναι;**
Jesus	says	to her,	"What	do we have in common,	**woman**?"

      The vocative of πατήρ is πάτερ (Note the change in the accent and stem vowel).
      Luke 23:34

Ἰησοῦς	ἔλεγεν,	**Πάτερ,**	ἄφες	αὐτοῖς,	οὐ γὰρ οἴδασιν	
Jesus	said,	"**Father**,	forgive	them,	for they don't know	
τί	ποιοῦσιν.					
what	they are doing."					

B. Appositives

1. When one noun is followed by another noun in the same case (nominative, dative, accusative), but there is no conjunction joining the two nouns, the second noun is called an appositive.
   1 Thessalonians 1:1
   τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ Θεσσαλονικέων ἐν θεῷ **πατρὶ.**
   To the church of the Thessalonians in God **the Father.**

2. A noun in the genitive may also be followed by another noun in the genitive.
   a. The second noun in the genitive often is a possessive genitive, or a descriptive genitive, or a subjective or objective genitive (cf. Lesson 16).
   b. At times, however, the second noun may be an appositive.
      Colossians 1:18
      αὐτός ἐστιν ἡ κεφαλὴ τοῦ σώματος **τῆς ἐκκλησίας.**
      He is the head of the body, **the church.**

      N.B. The first genitive (σώματος) is a descriptive genitive telling us what kind of head is meant, namely, a head connected to a body. The second genitive (ἐκκλησίας) is an appositive explaining what Paul means by the body connected to Christ, the head.
3. When a noun is an appositive, it explains the first noun in some way (cf. the two examples above in #1 and #2): In 1 Thessalonians 1:1, God is explained as the Father, and, in Colossians 1:18, the body of Christ is explained as the church.

C. Predicate Nominative

1. When two nouns are joined by a linking verb (εἰμί and γίνομαι, cf. Lesson 34), both nouns will be in the nominative case.
2. The noun before the linking verb is the subject. The noun following the linking verb is called a predicate nominative.
3. If both words appear before the linking verb, the subject will usually have an article and the predicative nominative will not have an article.
   1 John 4:8
   ὁ θεὸς ἀγάπη ἐστίν.
   God is love.

4. A predicate nominative can:
   a. either be the equal of the subject (Mark 2:28 ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ἐστιν κύριός σαββάτου = "The Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath."),
   b. or state an important point about the subject (1 John 4:8 ὁ θεὸς ἀγάπη ἐστίν).
      N.B. In the first example the subject and predicate nominative can be inverted ("The Lord of the Sabbath is the Son of Man") without any change in meaning. Inverting the second ("Love is God"), however, does not mean the same thing as "God is love."

D. Vocabulary

hide	καλύπτω	καλύψω	ἐκάλυπτον	ἐκάλυψα	κεκάλυφα
make clean	καθαρίζω	καθαριῶ	ἐκαθάριζον	ἐκαθάρισα	--------
have fellowship	κοινωνέω	κοινωνήσω	--------	ἐκοινώνησα	κεκοινώνηκα
cry out	κράζω	κράξω	ἔκραζον	ἔκραξα	κέκραγα
leave	λείπω	λείψω	ἔλειπον	ἔλιπον	λέλοιπα
untie	λύω	λύσω	ἔλυον	ἔλυσα	λέλυκα
commit adultery	μοιχεύω	μοιχεύσω	ἐμοίχευον	ἐμοίχευσα	--------
build	οἰκοδομέω	οἰκοδομήσω	ᾠκοδόμουν	ᾠκοδόμησα	ᾠκοδόμηκα

Exercises - Lesson 47

A. Translation and Syntax

- Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the question about each sentence.

1.

τὸ ἱερὸν ὁ οἰκὸς θεοῦ ἦν τόπος ὅπου ὁ λαὸς προσκύνει θεόν.

a. What case is each of these nouns, and why is each noun this case?

- ἱερὸν
- οἰκὸς
- θεοῦ
- τόπος
- λαὸς
- θεόν

b. ὁ οἰκὸς θεοῦ is an appositive. To what word is it an appositive? Explain.

c. τόπος is a predicate nominative. Explain its relationship to the subject.

d. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is προσκύνει?

- What kind of action is indicated by the tense of προσκύνει? Explain.

2.
ὁ πατὴρ ἔλεξε, υἱε, ἔρχου εἰς οὐρανον αἰώνιον βασιλείαν μου.

a. What case is each of these nouns, and why is each noun this case?
- πατὴρ

- υἱε

- οὐρανον

- βασιλείαν

b. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is each of these verbs?
- ἔλεξε

- ἔρχου

c. αἰώνιον is an adjective modifying βασιλείαν. Why doesn't it have the same feminine ending as βασιλείαν?

d. What kind of word is μου? Explain.

B. Translating Bible Passages

- Put the translation under each underlined word.
- Answer the questions about each passage.

1. Colossians 1:14

ἐν Χριστῷ ἔχομεν τὴν ἀπολύτρωσιν, τὴν ἄφεσιν τῶν ἁμαρτιῶν.
the forgiveness

a. What word does the prepositional phrase ἐν Χριστῷ modify? Explain.

b. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is ἔχομεν?

c. What is the significance of the article with ἀπολύτρωσιν and ἄφεσιν? Explain.

d. What kind of word is ἄφεσιν? Explain.

e. τῶν ἁμαρτιῶν is an objective genitive. Explain.

2. Matthew 15:28
γύναι, μεγάλη [ἐστιν] σου ἡ πίστις.

a. What kind of word is γύναι? Explain.

b. μεγάλη is a predicate adjective. Explain.

- What case, number, and gender is μεγάλη? Why is it this number and gender?

c. What kind of word is σου? Explain.

d. What case is σου? Why is it this case?

C. Memory Work

1. Review all those vocables that you don't know well yet.
2. Make out vocable cards for the words in the vocabulary of this lesson.

Lesson Forty-Eight

Unit L. Nouns: Incidentals

Lesson 47 Vocative Case, Appositives, Predicate Nominative
Lesson 48 Collective Nouns, Neuter Plural Nouns, Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

A. Collective Nouns

1. A collective noun is a noun that is singular in number but refers to more than one person.
2. An example in Greek is the word σπέρμα which means "offspring."
   a. σπέρμα can refer to one offspring (descendant) of a parent.
   Galatians 3:16

τῷ Ἀβραάμ	αἱ ἐπαγγελίαι	ἐρρέθησαν	καὶ	τῷ **σπέρματι** αὐτοῦ
Concerning Abraham	the promises	were spoken	and	concerning his **offspring**

ὅς	ἐστιν	Χριστός.
who	is	Christ.

   b. σπέρμα can also refer to many offspring (descendants) of a parent.
   Romans 4:18

εἰς	τὸ γενέσθαι	αὐτὸν	πατέρα	πολλῶν	ἐθνῶν
with the result that	he became	the	father	of many	nations

κατὰ	τὸ εἰρημένον,	Οὕτως	ἔσται	τὸ **σπέρμα**	σου.
just as	[God] said [to him],	"So	will be	the **offspring**	of you.

B. Neuter Plural Nouns

1. When plural masculine and feminine nouns are used as the subject in a sentence, the verb is plural in number.
   Matthew 12:1

οἱ μαθηταὶ αὐτοῦ	**ἐπείνασαν**	καὶ	**ἤρξαντο**	τίλλειν	στάχυας	καὶ	ἐσθίειν.
His disciples	were hungry	and	began	to pick	heads of grain	and	to eat [them].

2. When plural neuter nouns are used as the subject in a sentence, the verb is singular in number.
   John 5:36

αὐτὰ	**τὰ ἔργα**	ἃ	ποιῶ	**μαρτυρεῖ**	περὶ	ἐμοῦ	ὅτι	ὁ πατήρ	ἀπέσταλκεν	με.
These	works	which	I do	witness	about	me	that	the Father	sent	me.

C. Comparative and Superlative Forms of the Adjective

1. When two persons or things are being compared to each other, the comparative form of the adjective indicates that one is bigger, better, etc. than the other.
   Hebrews 4:12
   ὁ λόγος τοῦ θεοῦ [ἐστιν] **τομώτερος** ὑπὲρ πᾶσαν μάχαιραν δίστομον.
   The word of God is **sharper** than every sword with two edges.

2. The noun following the comparative adjective usually is in the genitive case (genitive of comparison), or it is used with the preposition παρὰ or ὑπέρ (cf. Hebrews 4:12 above) to express the comparison.
   Hebrews 1:4
   γενόμενος κρείττων **τῶν ἀγγέλων.**
   He became better **than the angels.**

3. The normal form of the comparative is: stem + τερ + ending.
   e.g. The comparative form of the adjective μικρός, ά, όν ("little") is μικρότερος, α, ον ("littler").
4. When more than two persons or things are being compared to each other, the superlative form of the adjective indicates that one is the biggest, best, etc. compared to all the others.
5. The normal form of the superlative = stem + ιστ + ending.
   1 Corinthians 15:9
   Ἐγὼ εἰμι ὁ **ἐλάχιστος** τῶν ἀποστόλων.
   I am the **smallest** of the apostles (i.e. least important of the apostles).

6. The superlative adjective is usually followed by a partitive genitive, that is, the word modified by the superlative genitive is the biggest, best, etc. part of the group that it is being compared to (cf. τῶν ἀποστόλων in 1 Corinthians 15:9 above).
7. In the Greek of the New Testament time, the superlative is used more and more with a relative meaning (i.e. ἐλάχιστος expresses the idea of "very small" rather than "smallest").
   1 Corinthians 4:3
   ἐμοὶ ἐστιν εἰς **ἐλάχιστόν** ἵνα ἀνακριθῶ ὑφ' ὑμῶν.
   For me it is a **very small** thing that I am judged by you.

8. In turn, the comparative is used more and more with a superlative meaning.
Matthew 13:32
   ἐστιν ὃ **μικρότερον** πάντων τῶν σπερμάτων.
   It is the **smallest** of all the seeds. (Jesus is speaking about the mustard seed.)

9. The comparative and superlative forms of some adjectives are entirely different from the basic adjective.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ	πλείων, πλεῖον	πλεῖστος, η, ον
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	μείζων, μείζον	μέγιστος, η, ον
ἀγαθός, ή, όν	κρείττων, ον	ἄριστος, η, ον
κακός, η, όν	χείρων (gen. χείρονος), ον	-------

D. Vocabulary

- Add the comparative and superlative forms of the four adjectives in C, 9 above to your vocable cards for these adjectives.

crucify	σταυρόω	σταυρώσω	-------	ἐσταύρωσα	ἐσταύρωκα
trouble	ταράσσω	ταράξω	ἐτάρασσον	ἐτάραξα	-------
honor	τιμάω	τιμήσω	-------	ἐτίμησα	τετίμηκα
love	φιλέω	φιλήσω	ἐφίλουν	ἐφίλησα	πεφίληκα
think	φρονέω	φρονήσω	ἐφρόνουν	ἐφρόνισα	πεφρόνικα
guard	φυλάσσω	φυλάξω	ἐφύλασσον	ἐφύλαξα	πεφύλαξα
help	ὠφελέω	ὠφελήσω	ὠφέλουν	ὠφέλησα	ὠφέληκα

Exercises - Lesson 48

A. Translation and Syntax

- Put the translation under each word.
- Answer the questions about each sentence.

1.

ὁ βασιλεὺς ἦν πονηρότερος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ὅς ἀπέκτεινε τὸ παιδίον.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is each noun the case that it is?

- βασιλεὺς

- ἀνθρώπου

- παιδίον

b. What case is πονηρότερος? Why is it this case?

- What number and gender is πονηρότερος? Why is it this number and gender?

- What kind of adjective is πονηρότερος? Explain.

c. What tense, voice, mood, person and number are these verbs?

- ἦν

- ἀπέκτεινε

d. What kind of word is ὅς?

- What case is ὅς? Why is it this case?

- What number and gender is ὅς? Why is it this number and gender?

2.
τὰ τέκνα ἤρχετο εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἵνα ἀκούσωσι τοὺς ἁγίους προφήτας.

a. What case is each of these nouns? Why is each the case that it is?
- τέκνα

- πόλιν

- προφήτας

b. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is ἤρχετο?

- What kind of action is indicated by the tense of ἤρχετο?

- Why is ἤρχετο the number that it is?

c. What kind of clause does ἵνα introduce in this sentence?

d. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is ἀκούσωσι?

- Why is ἀκούσωσι the mood that it is?

e. What case and number is ἁγίους? Why is it this case and number?

B. Translating a Bible Passage

- Put the translation under each underlined word.
- Answer the questions about the passage.

1. 1 Corinthians 13:13

νῦν μένει πίστις, ἐλπίς, καὶ ἀγάπη· μείζων δὲ τούτων ἡ ἀγάπη.

a. What kind of word is νῦν?

- What does νῦν modify? Explain.

b. What tense, voice, mood, person, and number is μένει?

- What kind of action is indicated by the tense of μένει?

c. What case are πίστις, ἐλπίς, and ἀγάπη? Why are these words this case?

d. What kind of word is δὲ? Explain.

e. What kind of adjective is μείζων? Explain.

- What number and gender is μείζων? Why is it this number and gender?

- What case is μείζων? Why is it this case?

f. What kind of word is τούτων? To what words does it refer?

- What case is τούτων? Why is it this case?

C. Memory Work

1. Make vocable cards for the words in the vocabulary of this lesson.
2. Go through all your vocable cards.
   a. Put those vocables that you know well in one group. Since you know them well, you don't need to go through this group as often as the group of vocables you don't know well yet. However, it would be good to review these vocables quickly once every other week so you don't begin to forget them.
   b. Put those vocables you don't know well yet in a second group. Keep reviewing them two or three times a week. As you begin to know some of these vocables well, transfer them to the other group for review once every other week.

Appendix A

Verse Reference Index

Matthew
1:2 ....195, 196
1:18 194
1:21 ....92, 202
2:2 52
2:23 203
2:5 39
2:9 104
4:9 216
4:12 202
5:15 47
5:17 196
5:21 167
5:23 49
5:36 196
6:10 47
6:28 141
7:4 48
7:26 24
8:16 73
8:20 196
8:27 58
8:33 206
9:13 195
9:34 73
11:7 52
11:22 48
12:1 244
12:19 30
12:22 46
13:14 30
13:32 245
15:28 243
16:13 141
18:12 65
20:27 103
21:11 59
21:34 62
22:3 67
25:31 ....77, 171
26:18 48
26:40 156
26:47 235
26:57 203
26:65 43
27:42 31
28:6 205
Mark
1:8 ....34, 102
1:40 118
2:12 205
2:28 240
3:9 202
4:35 238
5:11 ....70, 108
5:28 215
5:36 163
6:3 231
6:55 46
12:19 34
12:36 134
12:41 28
13:32 97
14:30 65
15:27 49
15:41 107
Luke
1:33 31
1:62 166
4:29 225
8:12 229
8:43 112
10:31 142
11:4 192
11:48 134
13:13 86
13:26 47
17:9 231
19:5 69
19:8 211
19:21 202
22:69 234

23:33 201
23:34 239
John
1:13 92
1:38, 39....158
1:47 104
2:4 239
2:19 229
2:21 72
3:16 ....172, 203
3:19 81
3:22 28
4:9 111
4:40 43
5:11 158
5:18 43
5:25 31
5:31 217
5:36 244
6:21 82
7:25 233
7:51 ....58, 62
8:3 24
8:28 34
8:33 40
8:49 24
9:2 146
9:41 220
11:26 167
12:29 63
13:34 143
15:5 174
15:16 134
18:19 70
18:20 34
18:31 49
19:4 24
19:8 46
19:25 48
19:30 5
21:22 203
Acts
2:6 131
2:8 25
2:22 135
2:33 65
2:37 195
2:38 ....70, 109
4:2 52
4:9-11 195
4:11 136
4:18 131
4:32 119
5:5 127
5:39 213
5:42 128
7:4 53
7:5 124
7:7 31
8:6 52
8:6-7 209
8:30 124
9:7 65
9:8 28
9:12 128
9:25 124
9:26 123
9:27 62
10:9 174
10:22 195
10:27 ....124, 129
11:16 68
12:2 65
12:6 47
12:8 195
14:23 222
15:36 48
17:32 43
20:19 195
20:26 237
22:11 28
Romans
1:5 206
1:17 12
1:18 12
2:23 24
2:29 104
3:19-20 14
3:22 ....70, 109
3:25-26 48
4:18 244
5:1 196
5:6 49
5:14 59
6:1 166
6:11 65
6:15 178
6:21 136
7:12 194
7:24 ....70, 108
8:3 49
8:14 65
14:2 196
14:6 68
1 Corinthians
2:8 220

4:3 245
4:15 87
10:30 66
11:10 111
11:23 62
11:26 167
13:13 248
15:9 245
2 Corinthians
1:4 156
3:1 142
7:14 68
7:6 118
Galatians
2:12 53
2:16 96
2:20 ....87, 122
2:21 ....116, 207
3:16 244
3:17 53
4:4,5 202
4:8 34
4:20 46
5:1 207
5:18 211
6:10 166
Ephesians
1:7 48
2:4 48
4:32 197
4:8 64
6:11 53
Philippians
2:7 143
2:8 73
4:7 73
Colossians
1:14 242
1:18 240
1 Thessalonians
1:1 240
2:9 81
4:16 134
5:17 158
1 Timothy
2:11 112
2 Timothy
4:21 48
Titus
2:11 112
Philemon
18 136
Hebrews
1:2 77
1:4 245
3:4 142
4:12 245
8:10 136
11:6 174
1 Peter
3:11 163
1 John
1:7 91
1:9 214
1:10 39
4:2 185
4:8 240
4:10 39
Revelation
7:13 140
17:1 166
20:4 34
22:10 166
22:20 239

Appendix B

The Greek Alphabet

Α	α
Β	β
Γ	γ
Δ	δ
Ε	ϵ
Ζ	ζ
Η	η
Θ	θ
Ι	ι
Κ	κ
Λ	λ
Μ	μ
Ν	ν
Ξ	ξ
Ο	ο
Π	π
Ρ	ρ
Σ	σ, ς
Τ	τ
Υ	υ
Φ	ϕ
Χ	χ
Ψ	ψ
Ω	ω